

# FORD **FOCUS** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2022

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3931en 202201 20220125115614



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Publication .....	17
Using This Publication .....	17
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication .....	17

## Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle .....	18
------------------------------------	----

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	21
Service Data .....	22
Event Data .....	22
Settings Data .....	23
Connected Vehicle Data .....	23
Mobile Device Data .....	23
Emergency Call System Data .....	24

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	25
----------------------------------	----

## Visual Search

Steering Wheel - Excluding: ST .....	26
Steering Wheel - ST .....	26
Instrument Panel .....	27

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions .....	28
Child Restraint Anchor Points .....	29
Child Restraints .....	31
Booster Seats .....	32
Child Safety Locks .....	32

## Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions .....	34
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts .....	34
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy .....	35
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height .....	36

Seatbelt Reminder .....	36
Checking the Seatbelts .....	37
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting .....	38

## Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work .....	39
How Do the Side Airbags Work .....	39
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work .....	40
Airbag Precautions .....	40
Airbag Locations .....	41
Airbags – Troubleshooting .....	42

## Emergency Assistance

What Is Emergency Assistance .....	43
How Does Emergency Assistance Work .....	43
Emergency Call Requirements .....	43
Emergency Call Limitations .....	44

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....	45
Removing the Key Blade .....	45
Locating Your Vehicle .....	45
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry .....	45
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	47
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....	47

## MyKey™

What Is MyKey .....	48
MyKey Settings .....	48
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition .....	50
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	50
Programming a MyKey .....	50
Clearing All MyKeys .....	50
Checking MyKey System Status .....	50

# Table of Contents

---

Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....	51
MyKey – Troubleshooting .....	51

## Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle .....	54
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....	56
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function .....	56
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor .....	57
Autounlock .....	57
Mislock .....	57
Autorelock .....	58
Door Lock Indicators .....	58
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings .....	58
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....	58

## Keyless Entry

Keyless Entry Limitations .....	60
Keyless Entry Settings .....	60
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Using Keyless Entry .....	61
Locking and Unlocking the Liftgate Using Keyless Entry .....	62
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting .....	62

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions .....	63
Opening the Liftgate .....	63
Closing the Liftgate .....	63
Liftgate – Troubleshooting .....	64

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions .....	65
Opening the Liftgate .....	65

Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	66
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	67
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height .....	67
Closing the Liftgate .....	67
Stopping the Liftgate Movement .....	69
Liftgate Obstacle Detection .....	69
Liftgate – Troubleshooting .....	69

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	72
Anti-Theft Alarm System .....	72
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings .....	73
Security – Troubleshooting .....	74

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	76
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition .....	76
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	77
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off .....	77

## Wipers and Washers

Wipers .....	78
Autowipers .....	79
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off .....	80
Reverse Wipe .....	80
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	80
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....	80
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades .....	81
Washers .....	81
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....	82

## Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control .....	83
---------------------------------	----

# Table of Contents

---

Headlamps .....	83
Headlamps – Troubleshooting .....	84
Autolamps .....	85
Exterior Lamps .....	85
Automatic High Beam Control .....	87
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....	89
Glare Free High Beam Control .....	89
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....	92
Adaptive Front Lighting .....	92
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting .....	94

## **Interior Lighting - Vehicles Without: Map Reading Lamps**

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....	95
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....	95
Interior Lamp Function .....	95
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness .....	95
Ambient Lighting .....	96

## **Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps**

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....	97
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off .....	97
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....	97
Interior Lamp Function .....	97
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness .....	98
Ambient Lighting .....	98

## **Windows**

Opening and Closing the Windows .....	99
Global Opening and Closing .....	99

Window Bounce-Back .....	100
Locking the Rear Window Controls .....	101

## **Interior Mirror**

Interior Mirror Precautions .....	102
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....	102

## **Exterior Mirrors**

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....	103
Folding the Exterior Mirrors .....	103

## **Moonroof**

Opening and Closing the Sun Shade .....	104
Opening and Closing the Moonroof .....	104
Venting the Moonroof .....	105
Moonroof Bounce-Back .....	105

## **Instrument Cluster**

Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	106
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	107
Tachometer .....	107
Speedometer .....	107
Fuel Gauge .....	107
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge .....	108
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	108
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	108
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	110
Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	110

# Table of Contents

---

## **Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen**

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls .....	113
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu .....	113
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display .....	114
Personalized Settings .....	114
Fuel Economy Display .....	115
What Is the Trip Summary .....	115

## **Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen**

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls .....	116
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu .....	116
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) .....	117
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) .....	117
Fuel Economy Display .....	117
What Is the Trip Summary .....	117

## **Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen**

Accessing the Trip Computer .....	118
Resetting the Trip Computer .....	118
Resetting the Individual Trip Values .....	118
Configuring the Trip Computer .....	118
Trip Data .....	118

## **Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen**

Accessing the Trip Computer .....	119
Resetting the Trip Computer .....	119
Trip Data .....	119

## **Head Up Display**

What Is the Head Up Display .....	120
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	120
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	120
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	120
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	121
Head Up Display Indicators .....	123
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting .....	123

## **Remote Start - Automatic Transmission**

What Is Remote Start .....	124
Remote Start Limitations .....	124
Enabling Remote Start .....	124
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle .....	124
Remote Start Settings .....	124

## **Climate Control**

Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	126
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	126
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	126



# Table of Contents

---

Switching Defrost On and Off .....	126
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	126
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	127
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield .....	127
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off .....	127
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	127
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	127
Setting the Temperature .....	127
Directing the Flow of Air .....	128
Auto Mode .....	128
Climate Control Hints .....	129

## Auxiliary Heater

What Is the Auxiliary Heater .....	131
Auxiliary Heater Precautions .....	131
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	131
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	131
Auxiliary Heater Indicators .....	131

## Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions .....	132
Sitting in the Correct Position .....	132
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 2-Way Manual Seat .....	133
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat .....	135
Power Seats .....	137
Heated Seats .....	138

## Rear Seats

Rear Seat Precautions .....	140
-----------------------------	-----

Manual Seats .....	140
--------------------	-----

## Rear Occupant Alert System - 5-Door, Vehicles With: SYNC 4

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	143
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	143
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	143
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	143
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off .....	143
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	144
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	144

## USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports .....	145
Playing Media Using the USB Port .....	145
Charging a Device .....	145

## Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet .....	147
Power Outlet Precautions .....	147
Locating the Power Outlets .....	147

## Cigar Lighter

Cigar Lighter Precautions .....	148
Using the Cigar Lighter .....	148

## Wireless Accessory Charger

Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	149
Charging a Wireless Device .....	149
Wireless Accessory Charger Indicators .....	149
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting .....	150

# Table of Contents

---

## **Storage**

Cup Holders .....	151
-------------------	-----

## **Starting and Stopping the Engine**

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions .....	152
Push Button Ignition Switch .....	152
Starting the Engine .....	153
Stopping the Engine .....	154
Automatic Engine Stop .....	155
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position .....	156
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting .....	156

## **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)**

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle .....	158
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work .....	158
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics .....	158
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators .....	158

## **Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission**

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	159
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	159
Auto-Start-Stop Settings .....	159
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	159
Stopping the Engine .....	159
Restarting the Engine .....	160
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	160
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning .....	160
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	160

## **Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission**

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	162
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	162
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	162
Stopping the Engine .....	162
Restarting the Engine .....	162
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	162
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning .....	163
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	163

## **Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)**

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	165
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	165
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	165
Stopping the Engine .....	165
Restarting the Engine .....	165
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	166
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning .....	166
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	166

## **Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)**

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	168
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	168
Stopping the Engine .....	168
Restarting the Engine .....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	169

# Table of Contents

---

Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	169
---	-----

## Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions .....	171
Fuel Quality .....	171
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel .....	172
Running Out of Fuel .....	172
Refueling .....	173
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	175
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	176
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings .....	177
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting .....	177

## Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter .....	178
Catalytic Converter Precautions .....	178
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting .....	178

## Gasoline Particulate Filter

What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter .....	179
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work .....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions .....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements .....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting .....	179

## Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions .....	181
Shifting Into Reverse .....	181
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators .....	181
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level .....	181

Clutch Fluid Specification .....	181
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting .....	182

## Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions .....	183
Automatic Transmission Positions .....	183
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear .....	184
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters .....	184
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters .....	184
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters .....	184
Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters .....	185
Stay in Neutral Mode .....	185
Automatic Return to Park (P) .....	186
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) .....	187
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings .....	187
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting .....	188

## Brakes

Brake Precautions .....	189
Anti-Lock Braking System .....	189
Brake Over Accelerator .....	189
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir .....	189
Checking the Brake Fluid .....	189
Brake Fluid Specification .....	190
Brakes – Troubleshooting .....	190

## Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....	192
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission .....	192
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission .....	192

# Table of Contents

---

Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency .....	192
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	193
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission .....	193
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission .....	193
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning .....	193
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge .....	193
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....	194

## Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist .....	195
How Does Hill Start Assist Work .....	195
Hill Start Assist Precautions .....	195
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission .....	195
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting .....	195

## Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work .....	196
Switching Auto Hold On and Off .....	196
Using Auto Hold - Manual Transmission .....	196
Using Auto Hold - Automatic Transmission .....	196
Auto Hold Indicators .....	197

## Traction Control

What Is Traction Control .....	198
How Does Traction Control Work .....	198
Switching Traction Control On and Off - Excluding: ST .....	198
Traction Control Indicator .....	198
Traction Control – Troubleshooting - Excluding: ST .....	198

## Stability Control

What Is Stability Control .....	200
How Does Stability Control Work .....	200
Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST .....	200
Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST .....	200
Stability Control Indicator - ST .....	201
Stability Control – Troubleshooting - ST .....	201

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation .....	202
Parking Aid Precautions .....	202
Switching Parking Aid On and Off .....	203
Rear Parking Aid .....	203
Front Parking Aid .....	204
Side Parking Aid .....	205
Parking Aid Indicators .....	206
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting .....	207

## Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera .....	208
Rear View Camera Precautions .....	208
Rear View Camera Limitations .....	208
Locating the Rear View Camera .....	208
Rear View Camera Guide Lines .....	208
Rear View Camera Settings .....	209

## 180 Degree Camera

What Is the 180 Degree Camera .....	211
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work .....	211
180 Degree Camera Precautions .....	211
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off .....	211

## Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist .....	213
Active Park Assist Precautions .....	213

# Table of Contents

---

Switching Active Park Assist On and Off .....	213
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist .....	213
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist .....	214
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist .....	214
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist .....	215
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist .....	215
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist .....	216
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting .....	216

## Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control .....	218
Switching Cruise Control On and Off .....	218
Setting the Cruise Control Speed .....	218
Canceling the Set Speed .....	219
Resuming the Set Speed .....	219
Cruise Control Indicators .....	219

## Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work .....	220
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work .....	220
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....	220
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....	221
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....	223
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	223

Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	223
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	224
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	224
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	225
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	226
Canceling the Set Speed .....	227
Resuming the Set Speed .....	227
Overriding the Set Speed .....	228
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....	228
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control .....	228
Lane Centering .....	228
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control .....	231
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....	232

## Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control .....	235
Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST .....	235
Selecting a Drive Mode - ST .....	235
Drive Modes .....	235
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting .....	236

## Eco Coach

What Is Eco Coach .....	237
How Does Eco Coach Work .....	237
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work .....	237

# Table of Contents

---

Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	237
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	237
How Does Trip Summary Work .....	237
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	237
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	238

## Efficient Drive Mode

What Is Efficient Drive Mode .....	239
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	239
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	239
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	239
Trip Summary .....	239
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators .....	240

## Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work .....	241
Speed Limiter Precautions .....	241
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering .....	241
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering .....	241
Setting the Speed Limit .....	241
Changing the Set Speed Limit .....	241
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering .....	241

Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering .....	242
Resuming the Set Speed Limit .....	242
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit .....	242
Speed Limiter Indicators .....	242
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings .....	242

## Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter .....	243
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work .....	243
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions .....	243
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering .....	243
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering .....	243
Setting the Speed Limit .....	244
Changing the Set Speed Limit .....	244
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance .....	244
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering .....	244
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering .....	244
Resuming the Set Speed Limit .....	244
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit .....	244
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators .....	245
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings .....	245
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter .....	245
Intelligent Speed Limiter - Troubleshooting .....	245

## Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System .....	246
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work .....	246

# Table of Contents

---

Lane Keeping System Precautions .....	246
Lane Keeping System Limitations .....	247
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off .....	247
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode .....	247
Lane Keeping System Settings .....	247
Alert Mode .....	247
Aid Mode .....	248
Alert and Aid Mode .....	248
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	249
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	249
Blind Spot Assist - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System, Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow .....	250
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System/Trailer Tow .....	252
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting .....	254

## Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System .....	255
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work .....	255
Blind Spot Information System Precautions .....	255
Blind Spot Information System Limitations .....	255
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission .....	256
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission .....	256
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off .....	256
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors .....	256

Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage .....	257
Blind Spot Information System Indicators .....	258
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting .....	258

## Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert .....	260
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work .....	260
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions .....	260
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations .....	260
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off .....	261
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors .....	261
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage .....	261
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators .....	262
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting .....	262

## Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist .....	263
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work .....	263
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work .....	264
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions .....	264
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations .....	264
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	265
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	265
Distance Indication .....	266
Distance Alert .....	266
Automatic Emergency Braking .....	266
Evasive Steering Assist .....	267
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting .....	267

# Table of Contents

---

## Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert .....	269
How Does Driver Alert Work .....	269
Driver Alert Precautions .....	269
Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4 .....	269
Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5 .....	269
Resetting Driver Alert .....	270
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting .....	270

## Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition .....	271
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work .....	271
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions .....	271
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations .....	271
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators .....	271
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance .....	272
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting .....	272

## Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition .....	273
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work .....	273
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions .....	273
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations .....	273
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators .....	273
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning .....	274
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance .....	274
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting .....	274

## Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions .....	275
Roof Rack .....	275
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier .....	276

## Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions .....	277
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover .....	277
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points .....	278

## Connecting a Trailer

Connecting a Trailer Precautions .....	279
--	-----

## Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions .....	280
Trailer Brake Precautions .....	280
Towing a Trailer Limitations .....	281
Loading Your Trailer .....	281
Trailer Towing Hints .....	281
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft .....	281
Towing Weights and Dimensions .....	282

## Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions .....	283
Breaking-In .....	283
Driving Economically .....	283
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	283
Floor Mats .....	284

## Crash and Breakdown Information

Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off .....	286
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	286
Post-Crash Alert System .....	287
Post Impact Braking .....	288



# Table of Contents

---

Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	288
Recovery Towing .....	289
Fail-Safe Cooling .....	290

## **Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission**

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....	292
Emergency Towing .....	292

## **Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission**

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....	293
---------------------------------------	-----

## **Emergency Equipment**

Storing a First Aid Kit .....	294
Storing a Warning Triangle .....	294

## **Fuses**

Fuse Precautions .....	295
Under Hood Fuse Box .....	295
Interior Fuse Box .....	299
Identifying Fuse Types .....	302
Fuses – Troubleshooting .....	302

## **Maintenance**

Maintenance Precautions .....	303
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	303
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	305
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	307
Engine Oil .....	308
Engine Cooling Fan .....	309
Coolant .....	309
12V Battery .....	313
12V Battery – Troubleshooting .....	315
Exterior Bulbs .....	317

## **Track Use - ST**

Track Use Precautions .....	321
-----------------------------	-----

## **Launch Control - ST, Manual Transmission**

What Is Launch Control .....	322
Launch Control Precautions .....	322
Launch Control Limitations .....	322
Switching Launch Control On and Off .....	322
Using Launch Control .....	322
Launch Control Indicators .....	322

## **Vehicle Care**

Cleaning the Exterior .....	323
Cleaning the Interior .....	324
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	327
Waxing Your Vehicle .....	327

## **Wheel and Tire Information**

Using Summer Tires .....	328
Using Winter Tires .....	328
Using Snow Chains - Excluding: Active/ST .....	328
Using Snow Chains .....	328
Using Snow Chains .....	329

## **Tire Care**

Checking the Tire Pressures .....	330
Inflating the Tires .....	330
Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: Active/ST .....	330
Tire Pressure Specifications - Active .....	332
Tire Pressure Specifications - ST .....	333
Inspecting the Tire for Damage .....	335
Tire Rotation .....	335

## **Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit**

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	337
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions .....	337

# Table of Contents

---

Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	337
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components .....	337
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	338

## **Tire Pressure Monitoring System**

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	342
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	342
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	342
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	342
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	343
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	343
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	343
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	344

## **Changing a Road Wheel**

Changing a Flat Tire .....	346
Wheel Nuts .....	350

## **Capacities and Specifications**

Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	351
Engine Specifications - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	352
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	353

Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	354
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	354
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	355
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	355
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	356
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	357
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	357
Washer Fluid Specification .....	358
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	358
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	359
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ .....	359
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	360
Brake Fluid Specification .....	360

## **Vehicle Identification**

Vehicle Identification Number .....	361
Vehicle Identification Plate .....	361

## **Connected Vehicle**

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	363
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	363
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	363
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	363
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	363
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	364

# Table of Contents

---

## Audio System

Audio System Precautions .....	366
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off .....	366
Selecting the Audio Source .....	366
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source .....	366
Adjusting the Volume .....	366
Setting a Memory Preset .....	366
Muting the Audio .....	366
Scrolling Through Menu Items .....	367
Selecting a Menu Item .....	367
Adjusting the Sound Settings .....	367
Setting the Clock and Date .....	367
AM/FM Radio .....	367
Switching the Display On and Off .....	368
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio .....	368

## Center Display Overview - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

Center Display Precautions .....	370
Center Display Limitations .....	370
Status Bar .....	370
Information On Demand Screen .....	371

## Voice Interaction - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

What is Voice Interaction .....	372
Setting the Wake Word .....	372
Beginning a Voice Interaction .....	372
Voice Interaction Examples .....	372

## Phone - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

Phone Precautions .....	374
Connecting Your Phone .....	374
Phone Menu .....	374
Making and Receiving a Phone Call .....	376
Sending and Receiving a Text Message .....	377

Switching Text Message Notification On and Off .....	378
--	-----

## Bluetooth® - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device .....	379
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® .....	379

## Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

App Precautions .....	380
App Requirements .....	380
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device .....	380
Enabling Apps on an Android Device .....	380
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off .....	381
Switching Android Auto On and Off .....	381

## Navigation - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

Accessing Navigation .....	382
Navigation Map Updates .....	382
Adjusting the Map .....	382
Live Traffic .....	382
Setting a Destination .....	382
Waypoints .....	383
Route Guidance .....	383

## Vehicle System Updates - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

Updating the Vehicle Systems Wirelessly .....	384
Performing a Master Reset .....	385

## Customer Information

Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	386
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	386
End User License Agreement .....	387

# Table of Contents

---

## **Appendices**

Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	413
-------------------------------------	-----

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

**Note:** Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

## Features and Options

**Note:** This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

## Illustrations

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

## Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

## USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

## WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

### Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

### Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

# Symbols Glossary

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Airbag



Air conditioning system



Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Blower motor



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Brake system



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Electric Parking brake



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt






Flammable



Front fog lamps

# Symbols Glossary

	Fuel pump reset		Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)
	Fuse compartment		Note operating instructions
	Hazard flashers		Panic alarm
	Headlamp high beams		Parking aid
	Headlamps on		Parking lamps
	Heated rear window		Passenger airbag activated
	Hill descent control		Passenger airbag deactivated
	Horn control		Power steering fluid
	Interior luggage compartment release		Power windows front/rear
	Jack		Power window lockout
	Keep out of reach of children		Requires registered technician
	Lighting control		Safety alert
	Low fuel level		See Owner's Manual
	Low tire pressure warning		See Service Manual
	Maintain correct fluid level		Side airbag

## Symbols Glossary

---



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Stability control off



Trail control



Turn Signal



Windshield defrosting system



Windshield wiping system



Windshield wash and wipe





**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

**Note:** We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

## SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

**Note:** *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

### Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

### Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 363).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 380).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

# Data Privacy

---

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a Master Reset** (page 385).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

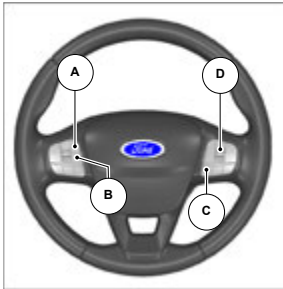
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You can take significant steps toward protecting the environment with correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

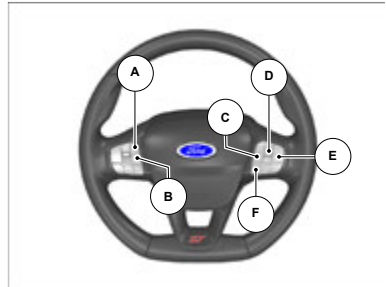
# Visual Search

## STEERING WHEEL - EXCLUDING: ST



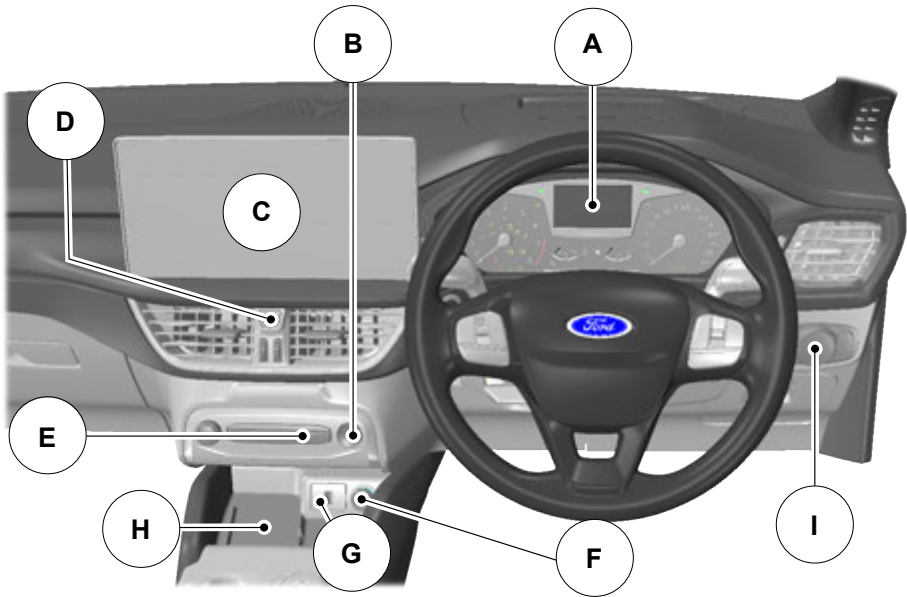
- A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 218).
- B See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 243). See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 243).
- C See **Beginning a Voice Interaction** (page 372).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 113). See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 116).

## STEERING WHEEL - ST



- A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 218).
- B See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 243). See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 243).
- C See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 235). See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 235).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 113). See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 116).
- E See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 235).
- F See **Beginning a Voice Interaction** (page 372).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL



- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 106). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107).
- B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 152).
- C See **Status Bar** (page 370).
- D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 286).
- E See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 213).
- F See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 147).
- G See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 145).
- H See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 149).
- I See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 83).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. Ford strongly recommends that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

**WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.

**WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.

**WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.



# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

## Selecting a Child Restraint System

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child

restraint. Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.

2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.**
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS



**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

# Child Safety

## LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS

**WARNING:** The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

## LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS

**WARNING:** Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

**WARNING:** Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seatback is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.

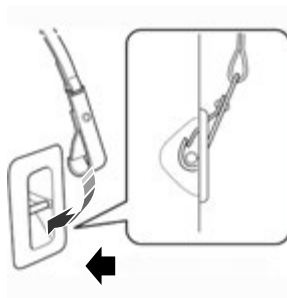
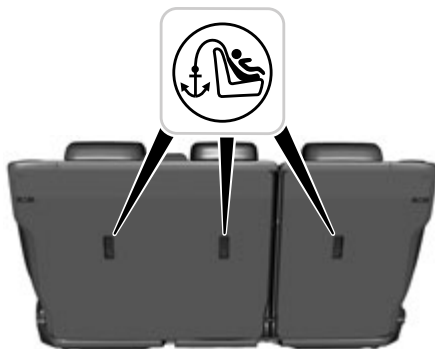
**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

**WARNING:** Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

**WARNING:** Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

There are three child restraint top tether anchorages, one for each rear seating position, as shown in the following picture.



# Child Safety

The top tether anchorages are only suitable for child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 or later.

If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attaching clip as shown, you should consult an approved restraint fitting station.

**Note:** Arrow points to front of vehicle.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation.

See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 277).

**Note:** You may need to raise or remove the head restraint to ease installation.

See **Adjusting the Head Restraint** (page 133).

## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

**Note:** Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.



**WARNING:** Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, raise the head restraint (where fitted) and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This prevents the tether strap from falling off the outboard edge of the seating positions.

# Child Safety



E166723

**Note:** Side curtain air bags (where fitted) will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a collision or sudden stop and injure someone.

## BOOSTER SEATS



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



The rear seats are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt.

The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.

A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

## Child Safety

---



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

### **Left-Hand Side**

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.


### **Right-Hand Side**


Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

# Seatbelts


## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.

 **WARNING:** Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.


 **WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.


See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 132).


 **WARNING:** Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

 **WARNING:** Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.

 **WARNING:** Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

 **WARNING:** Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

 **WARNING:** Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.

 **WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

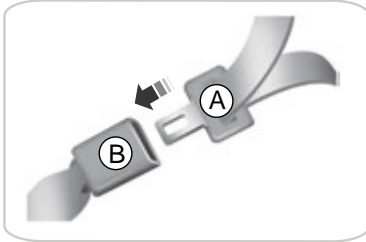
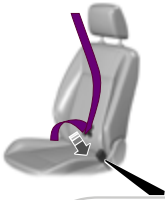
 **WARNING:** Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

### Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.

# Seatbelts



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

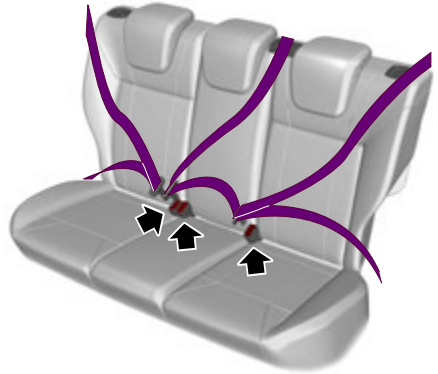
1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

**Note:** Make sure that you properly fasten the seatbelt tongue in the seatbelt buckle.

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.



**Note:** The rear outer seatbelts can lock if you return the seat backrest from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the seatbelt lock, feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

## Unfastening the Seatbelts

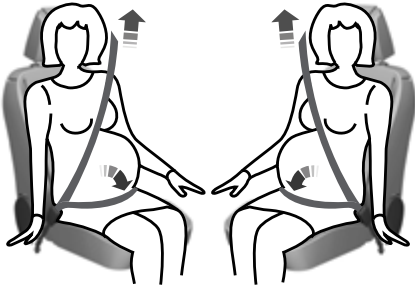
1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

# Seatbelts



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E183582

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.



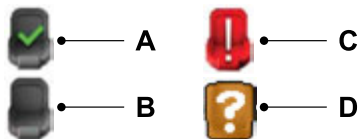
# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

## CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

## Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Seatbelts**.

## CHECKING THE SEATBELTS


Inspect the vehicle seatbelts periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears, cuts or severe fraying. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), should be inspected after a crash.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

See **Cleaning Seatbelts** (page 326).

## Status after a Collision

 **WARNING:** Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

 **WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Seatbelts

---

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or,

if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag is deployed.

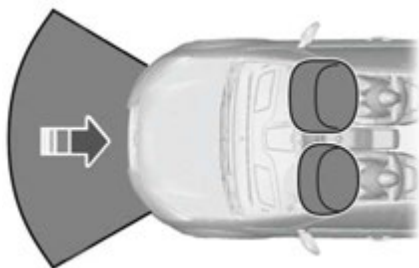
## SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Airbags

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

# Airbags



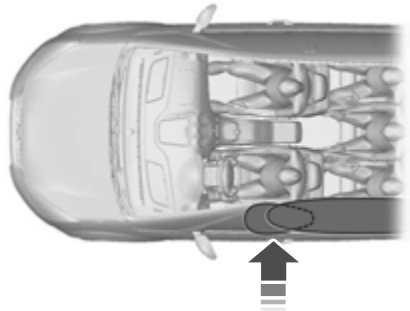
The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

## HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the airbag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.



**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



**WARNING:** Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

# Airbags

**WARNING:** Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.

**WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

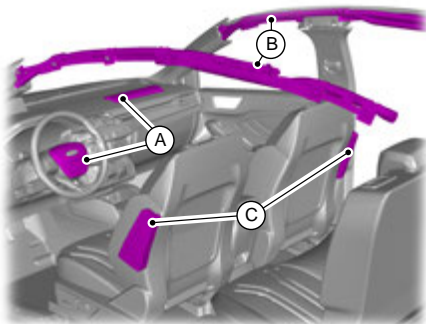
**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

## AIRBAG LOCATIONS



- A Front Airbags.
- B Side Curtain Airbags.
- C Side Airbags.

**Note:** The location of airbags are indicated by the word Airbag.

## **AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS**



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### **AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS**

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

# Emergency Assistance

## WHAT IS EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

Emergency Assistance is a system that automatically uses your paired phone to call the emergency services in the event of a severe accident.

## HOW DOES EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, your vehicle can contact emergency services by dialing the emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 24).

**Note:** *If any user sets Emergency Assistance to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assistance is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone, SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time, about 10 seconds, to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



**WARNING:** Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.

# Emergency Assistance

---



**WARNING:** Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Emergency Assistance works correctly when all of the following occur:

- SYNC works properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assistance feature is set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle has battery power and is in a territory where Emergency Assistance is supported.

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Emergency Assistance does not work if any of the following occur:

- Your cellular phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone thrown from your vehicle is the one paired and connected to the system.

**Note:** *The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature only operates in territories that are supporting the feature.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC Emergency Assistance works with most cellular phones, some could have trouble using this feature.*



# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

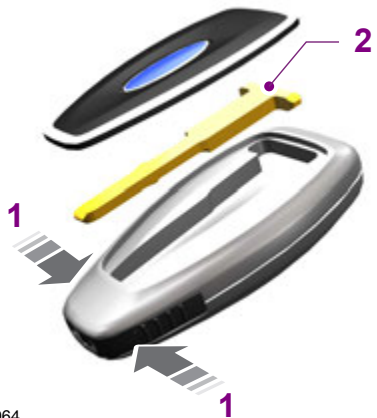
**Note:** Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE

The passive key contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

# Keys and Remote Controls



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

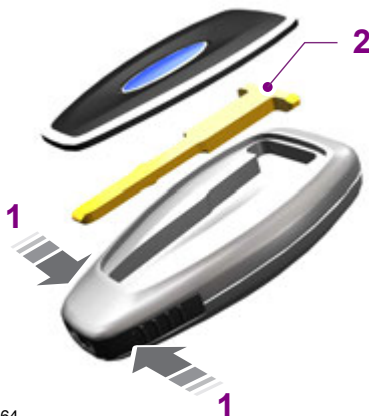


**CAUTION:** The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

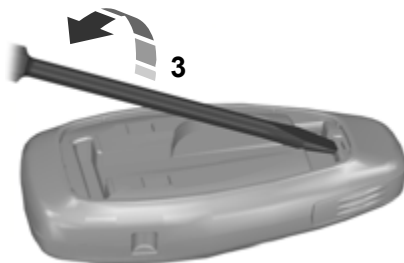
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.

2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

## Keys and Remote Controls



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

### REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

## WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted settings to promote good driving habits.

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS - EXCLUDING: ST

#### Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

#### Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

### NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS - ST

#### Seatbelt Reminder

The audio system mutes when the seatbelt reminder turns on. The seatbelt reminder cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

## Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

## Selectable Drive Modes

You cannot select some drive modes when using a MyKey.

## Traction Control and Stability Control

You cannot switch traction control or stability control off when using a MyKey.

### CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS - EXCLUDING: ST

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

#### Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

## Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

## Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

## Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

## Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

## Traction and Stability Control

If you set traction control or stability control to be always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS - ST

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

## Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

## Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

## Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

## Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

## Do Not Disturb

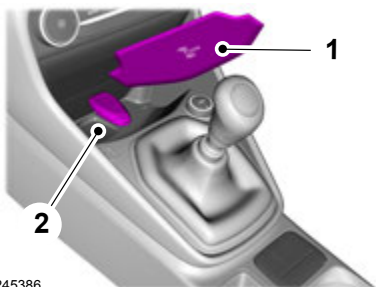
If you set do not disturb to be always on, it cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **Create MyKey**.
6. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *We recommend that you label this key.*

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



E245386

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the admin key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
3. Switch the ignition on.
4. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
5. Press **Vehicle**.
6. Press **MyKey**.
7. Press **Create MyKey**.
8. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *We recommend that you label this key.*

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can only program MyKeys to the same settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.
6. Configure the setting.
7. Switch the ignition off.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **Clear all MyKeys**.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey and also the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **MyKey**.

5. Press **MyKey Information**.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

The system is not compatible with non-Ford remote start systems.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Message	Description
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

## MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Message	Description
Place key in backup location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 50). See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 50).
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.



## MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

### What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

### Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key.

### Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

### Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

### Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 50).

## MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

### Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

You have not placed the admin key in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50). The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key. You did not switch the ignition off after creating the last MyKey.

### Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

### Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50).

### Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 50). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 50).

### Why am I not able to start the engine with a MyKey?

An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. The system recognizes only the admin key when both are present.

# Doors and Locks

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

#### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors.

#### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

**Note:** For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 60).

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

#### Removing the Lock Cylinder Cap

1. Release the key blade from the remote control. See **Removing the Key Blade** (page 45).



E243949

2. Fully insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Gently pull the lock cylinder cap toward you to release it.
4. Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder.

#### Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

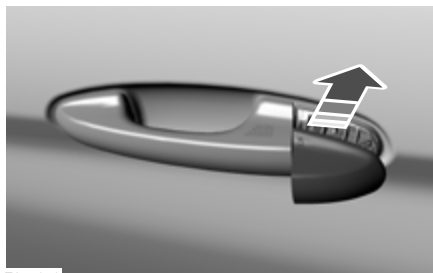
#### Unlocking the Driver Door

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.

# Doors and Locks

## Reinstalling the Lock Cylinder Cap



E244050

1. Place the cap over the lock cylinder.
2. Push the cap forward until it clicks into place. Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

## DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

## DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE



**WARNING:** Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

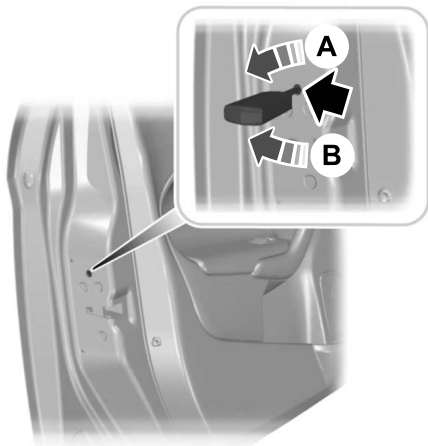
Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.

1. Remove the lock cylinder cap. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 54).
2. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.
3. Reinstall the lock cylinder cap.

# Doors and Locks

## INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

### Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, individually lock the doors using the key in the position shown.

#### Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

#### Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

### Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then individually unlock all other doors by pulling the interior door handles.

**Note:** When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be individually locked until the central locking function has been repaired.

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

**Note:** The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

### REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

# Doors and Locks

---

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- If you unlock any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Select **Unlocking**.
5. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.

## DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR

### HOW DOES THE DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR WORK

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.

When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.

**Note:** *You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.*

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is an unlocking feature that unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop.

### AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h.
- Your vehicle comes to a stop.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

### SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

## MISLOCK

### WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

# Doors and Locks

---

## HOW DOES MISLOCK WORK

The horn sounds when you press the lock button on the remote control twice within three seconds and a door is open.

### MISLOCK LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ANTI-THEFT ALARM

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if any door or the liftgate is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

### MISLOCK LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ANTI-THEFT ALARM

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

## SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

## AUTORELOCK

### HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

## DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

## DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

## DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

### Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

## Doors and Locks

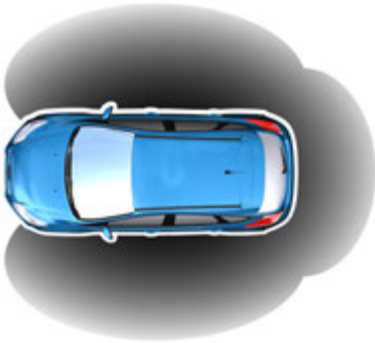
---

### DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

# Keyless Entry

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1.5 m from the front door handles and the liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The passive key remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### SWITCHING KEYLESS ENTRY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.

4. Switch **KeyFree** on and off.

### SWITCHING KEYLESS ENTRY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/SYNC 4

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

### REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Locks**.
4. Select **Unlocking**.
5. Select **All doors** or **Driver's door**.



# Keyless Entry

## REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/SYNC 4

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open any other door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

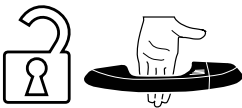
You can change between the unlocking modes on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Unlocking**.
5. Select a setting.

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE DOORS USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### UNLOCKING THE DOORS

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the top of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

### LOCKING THE DOORS

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

**Note:** Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

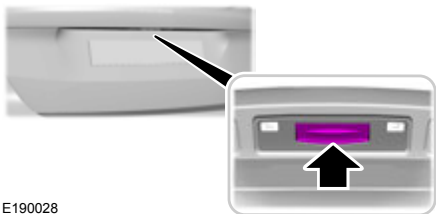
# Keyless Entry

## DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS

Touch a lock sensor twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle.

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE LIFTGATE USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### UNLOCKING THE LIFTGATE



E190028

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be within the detection range.

### LOCKING THE LIFTGATE

The liftgate locks after you fully close it.

## KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 60). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

#### Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

#### Why does the passive key not work?

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

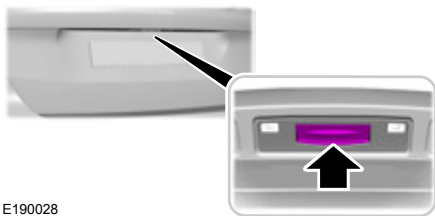
## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

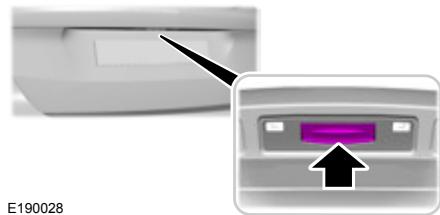
**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate.



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

A recessed grip or handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

**Note:** *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

### LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

### LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press the button next to the lighting control.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

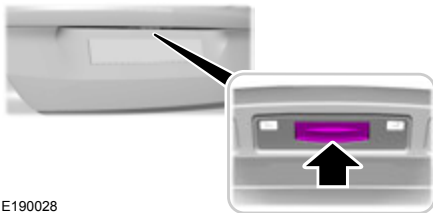
**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

**Note:** If an authorized device is within 1 m of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate control button.



E190028

2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

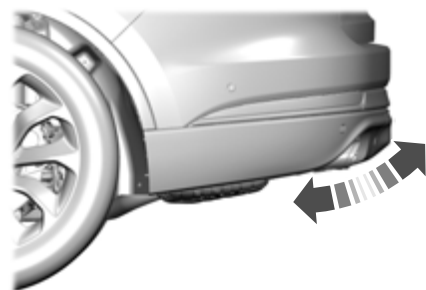
**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

### Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

**Note:** Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the authorized device away from the rear bumper detection area.

### SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

3. Select **Power liftgate**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

### SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Power liftgate**.
4. Select a setting.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

### SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

**Note:** Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

**Note:** You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

**Note:** You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

**Note:** The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

#### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press the button next to the lighting control. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

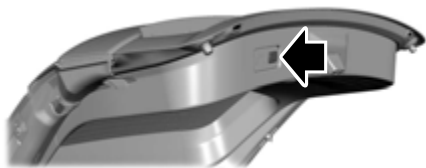
**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

#### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate



Press and release the liftgate button. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

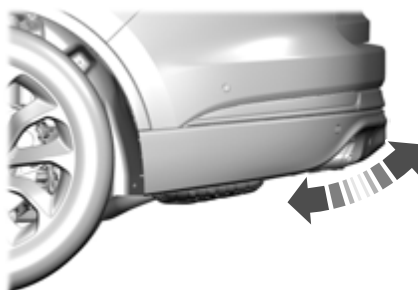
**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

**Note:** A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free feature:



## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

### Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

**Note:** Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

### STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

**Note:** Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

### LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

#### Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

**Note:** To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.

#### Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

### LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

---

### LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

### **LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **Why won't my power liftgate function?**

Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate. If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

### DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The Anti-Theft Alarm System warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

### WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

### WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

**Note:** *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

### WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

# Security

---

## WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if the vehicle battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

## ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when your vehicle is switched off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

## DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

### WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, full guard and reduced guard.

#### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

#### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *The alarm security level will switch back to full guard once the power is turned on.*

## SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Alarm system**.
4. Select **Alarm settings**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Press **Motion Sensors**.
5. Press a setting.

## WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

# Security

**After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Full guard	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced guard	

**Note:** *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

4. Select **Ask on exit**.
5. Switch **Ask on exit** on or off.

## SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Alarm system**.

## SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

## SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm announcement	

## **SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if there is any potential alarm problem with my vehicle?**

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### **What should I do if the vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?**

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 132).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

## LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel



**WARNING:** Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

**Note:** You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.



## LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

**Note:** *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

### Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

**Note:** *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

## SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



To switch the heated steering wheel on or off, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls.

**Note:** *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

# Wipers and Washers

## WIPERS

### WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

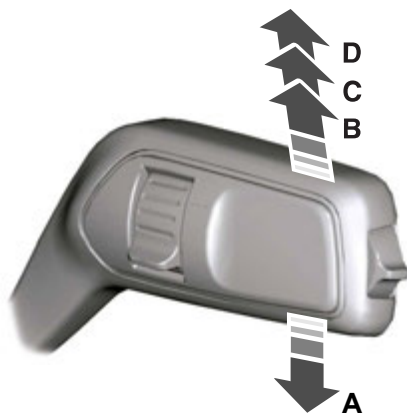
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 80). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 80). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 81).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wiper may decrease.

## SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF

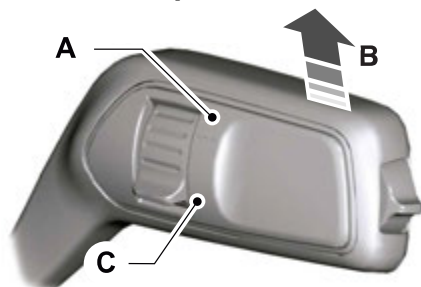


E248785

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent Wipe.
- C Normal Wipe.
- D High-speed Wipe

# Wipers and Washers

## Intermittent wipe



E242320

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

## AUTOWIPERS

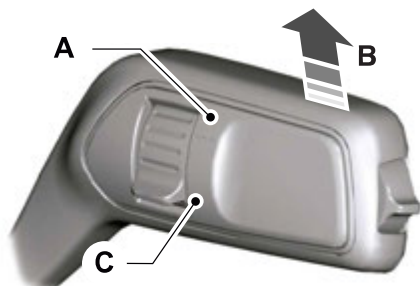
### WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

### AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

## ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



E242320

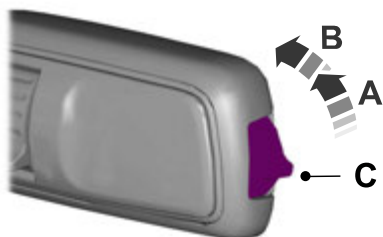
- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers.

**Note:** *Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.*

# Wipers and Washers

## SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

## REVERSE WIPE

### WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

### REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



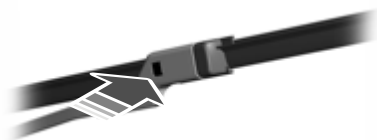
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

## REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure.

1. Fully lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Press the wiper blade locking button.



# Wipers and Washers

3. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

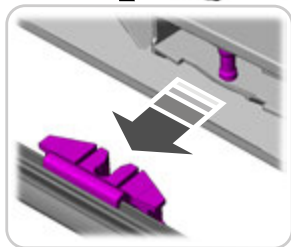
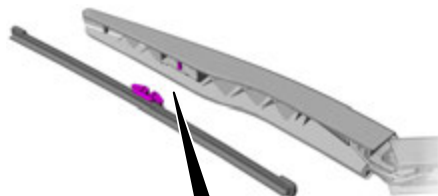
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



E183236

2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

### USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

**Note:** A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on.

### SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

# Wipers and Washers

## USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

## ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
2. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 358).
3. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

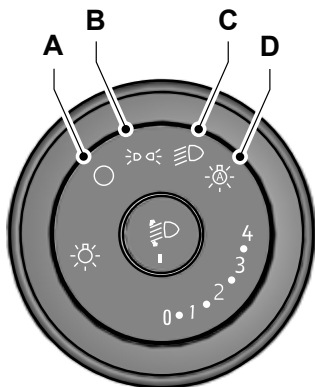
## WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 80). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 80). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 81).

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps.
- C Headlamps.
- D Autolamps. See **What Are Autolamps** (page 85).

Rotate the control to make a selection.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

### SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

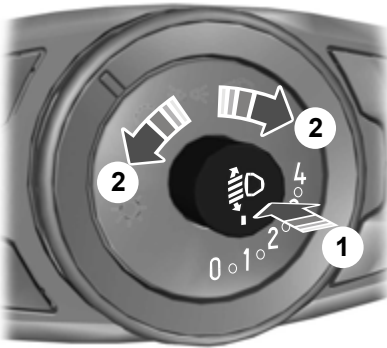
**Note:** The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

# Exterior Lighting

## ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

## ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.
3. Press to close the control.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

## Headlamp High Beam



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

## Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the headlamp low beam is on, this indicates that a headlamp low beam has failed.

## HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

#### How much condensation is acceptable?

The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.



# Exterior Lighting

## How long may it take for the acceptable condensation to be cleared?

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

## How much condensation is unacceptable?

A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

## What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

### AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.

4. Press **Headlamp Delay**.

5. Press a setting.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### SWITCHING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS ON AND OFF



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

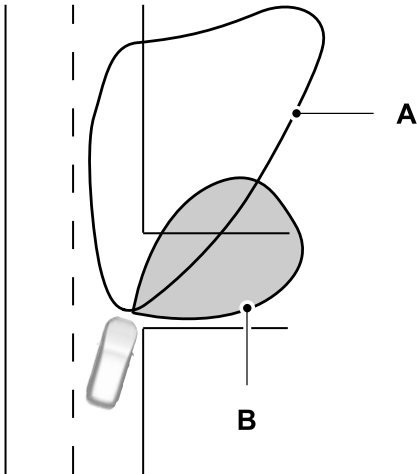
**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

### HOW DO CORNERING LAMPS WORK

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel or when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** You cannot activate the system by switching the turn signal lamps on if your vehicle is stationary.

# Exterior Lighting



- A Headlamp beam.  
B Cornering lamp beam.

## SWITCHING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS ON AND OFF

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

**Note:** When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the headlamps are on.

## SWITCHING THE REAR FOG LAMPS ON AND OFF

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

## EXTERIOR LAMP INDICATORS

### Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

### Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

### Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

## EXTERIOR LAMP AUDIBLE WARNING

### Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

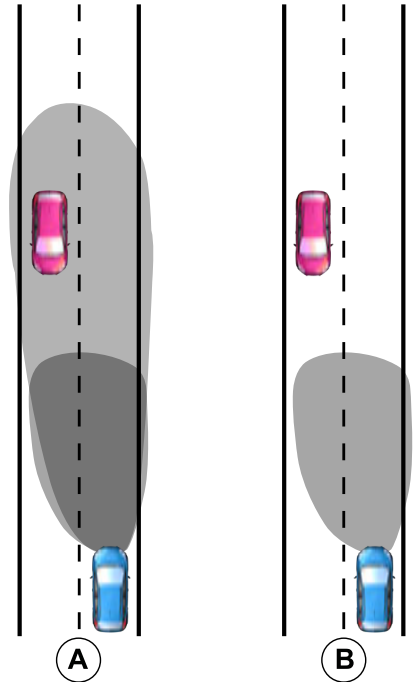
# Exterior Lighting

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

# Exterior Lighting



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto Highbeam** on or off.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## Exterior Lighting

---

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

#### HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.

# Exterior Lighting

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.



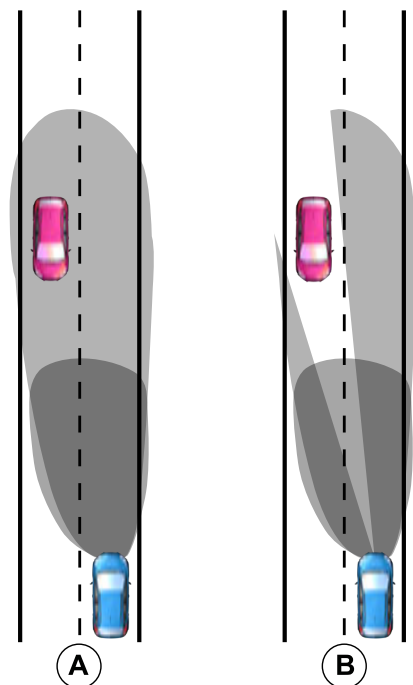
**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



- A Without glare free high beam control.
- B With glare free high beam control.

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

# Exterior Lighting

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

**Note:** *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

## SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Glarefree Lighting** on or off.

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

# Exterior Lighting

---

## GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

### HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK

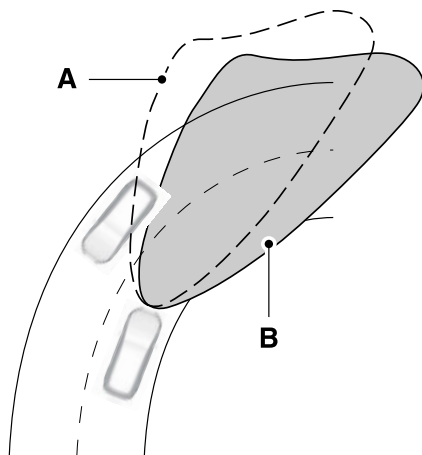
Adaptive front lighting adapts when you are steering around a curve, or if the camera detects lane markings indicating a curve or traffic signs indicating an intersection or a roundabout.

**Note:** *Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.*



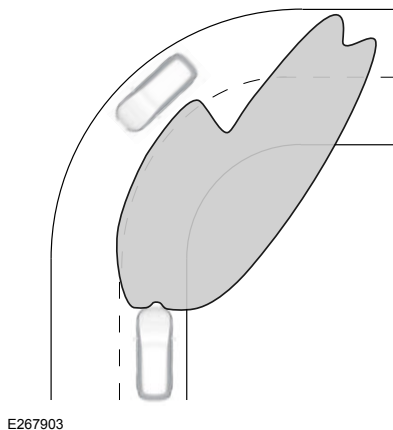
# Exterior Lighting

## Steering Around a Curve

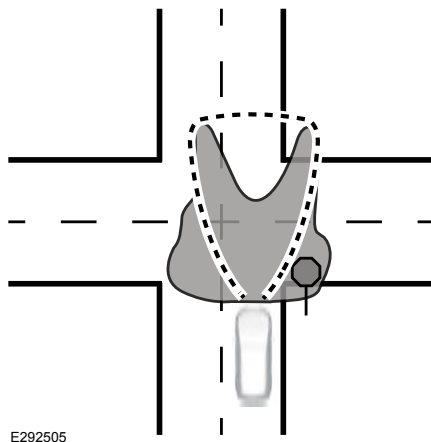


- A Without adaptive front lighting.
- B With adaptive front lighting.

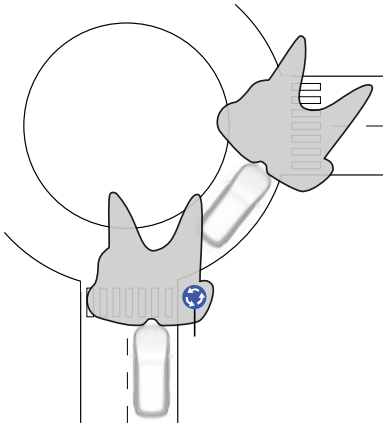
## Camera Detects Lane Markings



## Camera Detects Traffic Signs



# Exterior Lighting



E266972

The camera only detects traffic signs if your vehicle speed is below 50 km/h.

## SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Adaptive Headlamps Setup**.
5. Press a setting.

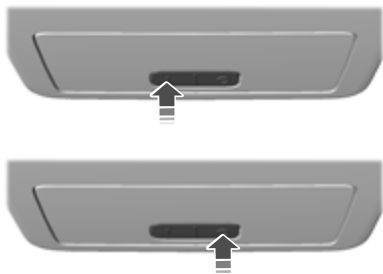
## ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

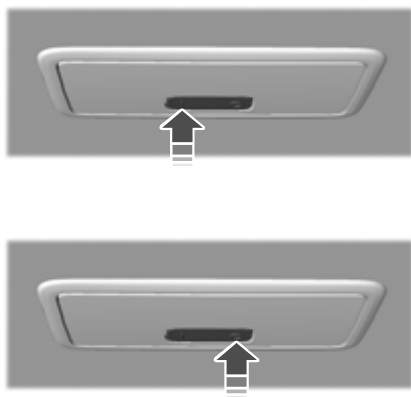
Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Interior Lighting - Vehicles Without: Map Reading Lamps

### SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



### SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



### INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

#### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

#### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

**Note:** If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

### ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

# Interior Lighting - Vehicles Without: Map Reading Lamps

---

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

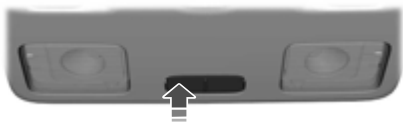
### SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Switch the ignition on.

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the ambient light.*

## Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps

### SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



### SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



**Note:** Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

### SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMP ON AND OFF



### INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

#### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

#### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



E264886

When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

**Note:** If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

### ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



### AMBIENT LIGHTING

#### SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Switch the ignition on.

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the ambient light.*

# Windows

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

**Note:** The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.

2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

### WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

### USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

**Note:** The moonroof stops in the vent position.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

**Note:** You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

# Windows

## SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global open** on or off.

## USING GLOBAL CLOSING



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

**Note:** *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 100).*

## SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global close** on or off.

## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

## OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the control within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

**Note:** *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.



4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

### AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

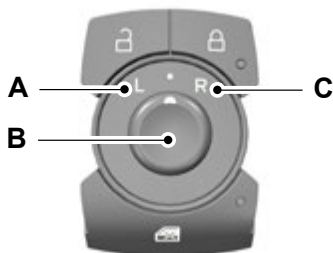
Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

**Note:** A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

### ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror position.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror position.

### FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on or off.

# Moonroof

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUN SHADE

### Opening the Sun Shades



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the sun shades. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sun shade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the rear of the control.

### Closing the Sun Shades



**WARNING:** When closing the sun shade, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the sun shade.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the sun shades. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sun shade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF

### Opening the Moonroof



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the rear of the control again to open the moonroof.

### Closing the Moonroof



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

# Moonroof

---

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control.

## VENTING THE MOONROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

## MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

The moonroof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

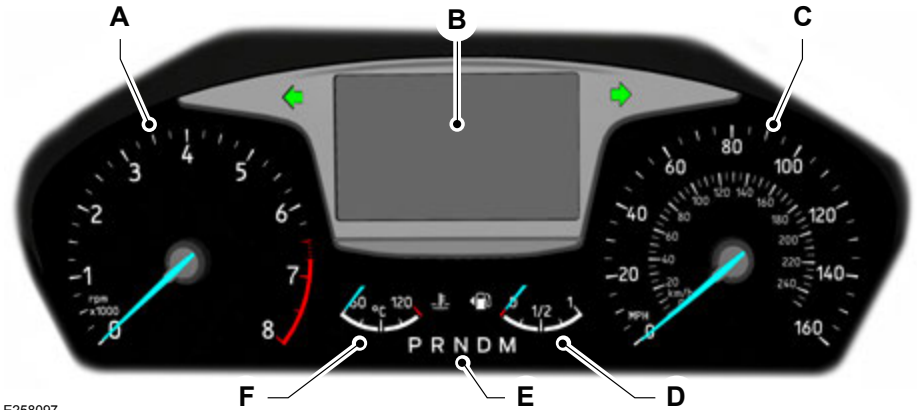
### OVERRIDING MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK



Press and hold the front of the switch within a few seconds to override bounce-back.

# Instrument Cluster

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



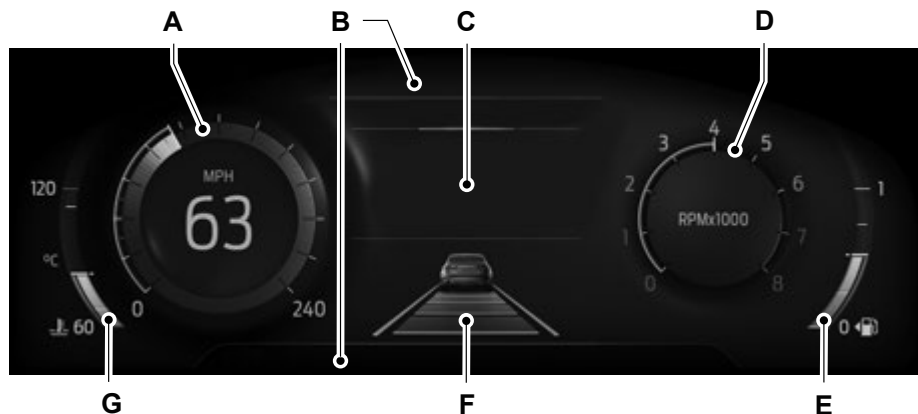
E258097

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Automatic transmission position indicators.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

### Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen



- A Speedometer.
- B Information bar.
- C Information display.
- D Tachometer.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Driver assistance information.
- G Engine coolant temperature gauge.

## TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

## SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

## FUEL GAUGE

### WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

# Instrument Cluster

## FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

## WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

## WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

## ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

### Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp



It flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 192).



# Instrument Cluster

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



**WARNING:** If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 308).

## Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The on-board diagnostics system has detected a malfunction to the emissions control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

## Hood Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the system activates.

## Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the liftgate is not completely closed.

# Instrument Cluster

## Low Beam Headlamp Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the low beam headlamps are on, this indicates that a low beam headlamp bulb has failed.

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when one or more of the tires are significantly under inflated. See **Tire Pressure**

**Monitoring System** (page 342).

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



It illuminates if the system detects the diesel exhaust fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

## Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

### Adaptive Cruise Control



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

### Automatic High Beam



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

### Auto Hold Active



Illuminates when the system is active.



# Instrument Cluster

## Auto Hold Unavailable



It illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.



## Auto-Start-Stop



It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



It illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## Blind Spot Information System Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on or in conjunction with a message.

## Cruise Control



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

## Direction Indicator



It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

## Door Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

## Front Fog Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Fuel Operated Heater Operating



It illuminates when the fuel operated heater is currently in operation.

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting the engine.

## Hazard Flasher



It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

## High Beam Headlamp



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

## Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

## Lane Keeping Alert



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

## Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

### Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance,



fuel economy or lower emissions.

### Stability Control and Traction Control



It flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

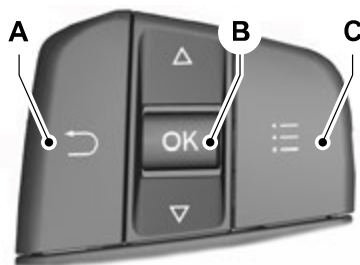
## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E356763



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

### OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

### Menu button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Menu Item
<b><i>Trip computer 1 or Trip computer 2</i></b>
MyView
Driver assist.
Navigation
Audio

## Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

Menu Item
Phone
Settings
Head-up display (HUD)

### CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView** and press the menu button.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the **OK** button.

#### Hybrid Gauge

The Hybrid Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed.

When the available maximum power is limited the gauge shows gray lines showing the reduction in available power. During deceleration, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system being returned to the high voltage battery.

#### Enabling Hybrid Gauge

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Hybrid gauge**.

### PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

#### CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Language**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

#### CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Measurement unit**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

#### CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Temperature unit**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

#### CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

### SWITCHING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY AUDIBLE WARNINGS ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Chimes**.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

### FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.


**Note:** *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

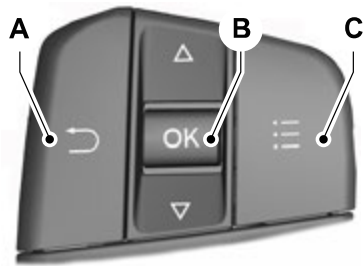
### WHAT IS THE TRIP SUMMARY

Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

# Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

### OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

### Menu button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Menu Item
Select screens
Phone
Navigation
Audio



# Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

---

Menu Item
Settings
Display settings
Head-up display (HUD)

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

### Adding Screens Using Select Screens

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.

### Hybrid Gauge

The Hybrid Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed.

When the available maximum power is limited the gauge shows gray lines showing the reduction in available power. During deceleration, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system being returned to the high voltage battery.

### Enabling Hybrid Gauge

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Hybrid gauge**.

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

### Adding Screens Using Select Screens

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

**Note:** *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

## WHAT IS THE TRIP SUMMARY

Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.

## RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

## RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

### Resetting the Individual Trip Values

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
3. Select ***Reset individual values***.
4. Select the value to reset.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

## CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
3. Select ***Configure view***.
4. Select the value to display.
5. Press the **OK** button.

## TRIP DATA

Trip data includes the following:

- Trip Odometer - Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.
- Trip Timer - Registers the total time since you last reset the value.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed since you last reset the value.
- Distance to Empty - Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle could travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.
- Instantaneous Fuel - Indicates the current fuel consumption.

### ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.

### RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

### TRIP DATA

Trip data includes the following:

- Trip Odometer - Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.
- Trip Timer - Registers the total time since you last reset the value.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.

# Head Up Display

---

## WHAT IS THE HEAD UP DISPLAY

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

## SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Head-up display (HUD)**.
3. Switch **Head-up display (HUD)** on or off.

## SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Head-up display (HUD)**.
4. Switch **Head-up display (HUD)** on or off.

## HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel.
2. Select **Settings** and press the menu button.
3. Select **Head-up display (HUD)**.
4. Press the **OK** button.

## Selecting Which Information the System Displays

Start the engine and switch the system on.

**Note:** *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. The system limits their use to when your vehicle is not moving.*

Use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel to select which information the system displays.

## Head Up Display

---

Menu Item	Action
Content	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Distance indication	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Eco advice	
Incoming calls	
Lane keeping system	
Navigation	
Speed assistance	
Speed sign recognition	

2. Select **Head-up display (HUD)**.
3. Press the **OK** button.

### HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

## Head Up Display

---

Menu Item	Action
Adjustment	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Position	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li><li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical position of the blue frame.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure that you can see all of the blue frame.</li><li>• Do not physically move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.</li></ul></li></ol>
Brightness	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li><li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the brightness of the display screen.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The system adjusts the brightness based on how dark it is. If you set the brightness to a high level, the system reduces the brightness at night.</li></ul></li></ol>
Vertical size	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li><li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical size of the display screen.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A small vertical size could be more suitable if you sit in a high position.</li></ul></li></ol>

# Head Up Display

## HEAD UP DISPLAY INDICATORS



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** The head up display indicator could illuminate to supplement an information message.

## HEAD UP DISPLAY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEAD UP DISPLAY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Heads-up display System malfunction See manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head-up display To position use the information display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the instrument cluster display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Activate remote start** On.

**Note:** To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 363).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signal lamps flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

**Note:** The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS

### Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C.

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.



# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

---

## Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** *If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

**Note:** *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.

# Climate Control

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

**Note:** *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

## SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

**Note:** *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

**Note:** *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

# Climate Control

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

**Note:** In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

**Note:** You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

**Note:** The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.

# Climate Control



Slide the control to set the temperature.

**Note:** You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

## AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

# Climate Control

## SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

**Note:** When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

**Note:** Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

## Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

## Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

## Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

## **Recommended Settings for Cooling**

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## **Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather**

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

# Auxiliary Heater

## WHAT IS THE AUXILIARY HEATER

The system is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

## AUXILIARY HEATER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the auxiliary heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

**Note:** *Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, in front of the right-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.*

**Note:** *When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

**Note:** *If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.*

## SWITCHING THE AUXILIARY HEATER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Aux heater**.

## SWITCHING THE AUXILIARY HEATER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Aux heater**.

## AUXILIARY HEATER INDICATORS

### Secondary Interior Heating System Active Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

# Front Seats

## FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

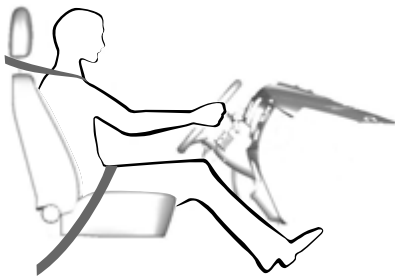


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



**WARNING:** Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.



## Front Seats

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

### MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 2-WAY MANUAL SEAT

#### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

#### Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

#### Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

#### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.

## Front Seats



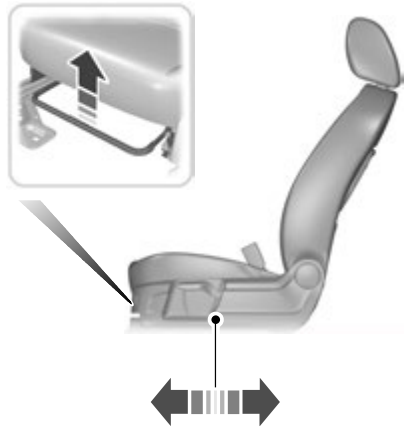
E265266

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

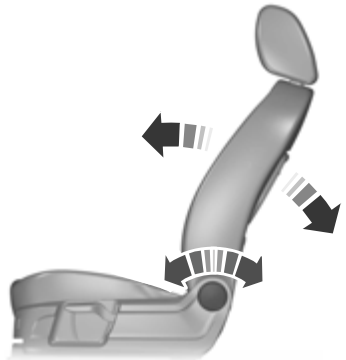


E147926

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



E265553

## Front Seats

### MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 4-WAY MANUAL SEAT

#### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

#### Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

#### Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E265266

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

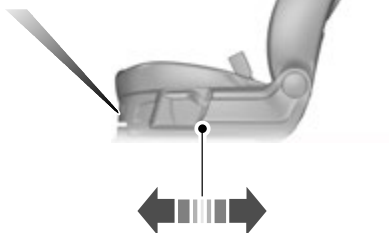
### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



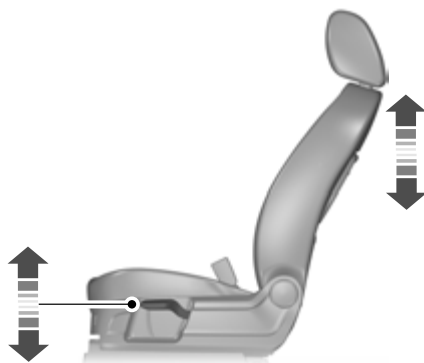
**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

# Front Seats

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



E147926

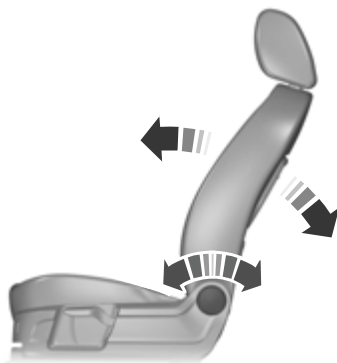


E189042

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



E265553

## ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



E161564

# Front Seats

## POWER SEATS

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

### Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

### Lowering the Head Restraints

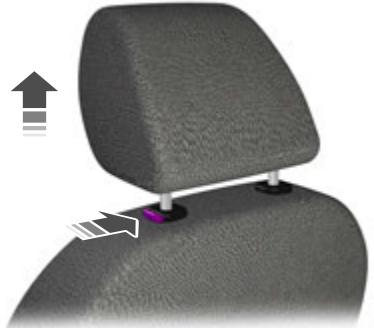
1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

## REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

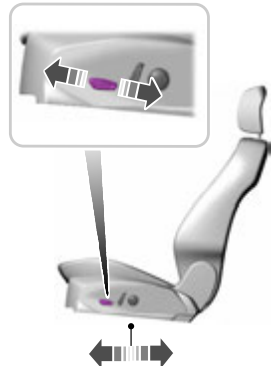
1. Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.



E265266

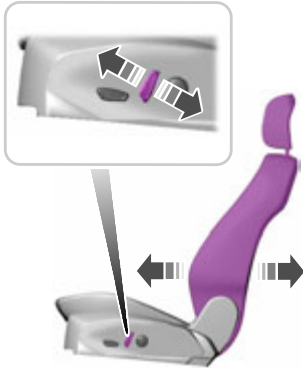
2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



## Front Seats

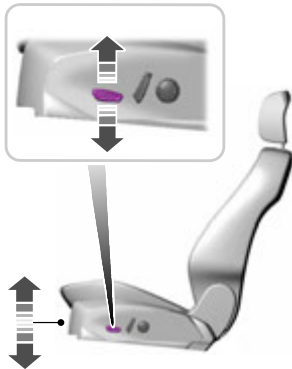
### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



### ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## HEATED SEATS

### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## Front Seats

---



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

**Note:** *The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

# Rear Seats

## REAR SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

## MANUAL SEATS

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

### Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

### Lowering the Head Restraints

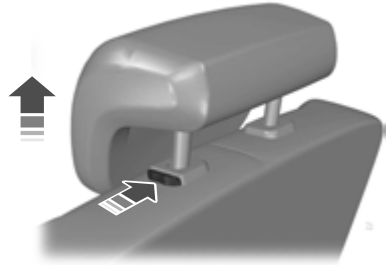
1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Fold the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E265267

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - WAGON



**WARNING:** Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



**WARNING:** Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

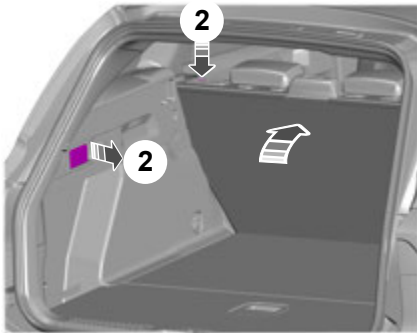


**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

1. Lower the head restraints.



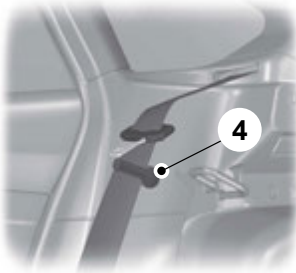
## Rear Seats



E265931

2. Press and hold the unlock button on the top of the seat or pull the lever on the rear quarter trim panel.
3. Push the seat backrest forward.

**Note:** Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.



E265248

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the trim.

**Note:** Make sure that the seatbelt is fully retracted.

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - 4-DOOR/5-DOOR

**WARNING:** Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

**WARNING:** Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

1. Lower the head restraints.



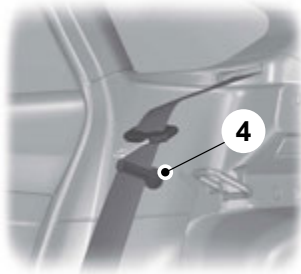
E265978

2. Press and hold the unlock button.
3. Push the seat backrest forward.

## Rear Seats

---

**Note:** Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.



E265248

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the trim.

**Note:** Make sure that the seatbelt is fully retracted.

### UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest until it latches in the upright position.

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

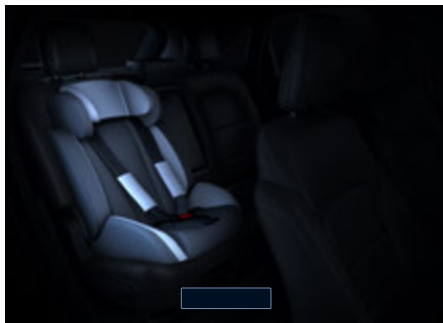
**Note:** *The default setting is on.*

**Note:** *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

### Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

# USB Ports

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

### Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel below the climate control.
- Inside the center console.

**Note:** *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

**Note:** *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

**Note:** *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

### Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- In the frunk.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.



Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

## CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

# USB Ports

---

## Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

## Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

# Power Outlet

---

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets could be in the following locations:

- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the luggage compartment.

### CIGAR LIGHTER PRECAUTIONS



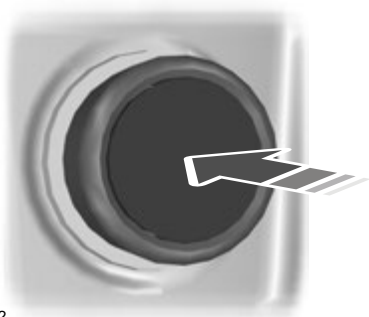
**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.*

**Note:** *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.*

### USING THE CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.



# Wireless Accessory Charger

## LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is below the climate control.



E265426

## CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

Place the device within the area shown and with the charging side down to begin charging. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

Make sure the charging area is clean and free from obstruction before charging a device to allow the device to lay flat on the charging area.

The system supports one wireless charging compatible device on the charging area.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running, or when SYNC is on.

**Note:** *Placing the device outside the area shown could affect the charging process.*

**Note:** *Charging time and temperature are dependent on the device used. The system stops charging the device if it reaches a high temperature.*

**Note:** *Devices without built-in Qi standards for wireless charging require an additional Qi receiver or sleeve.*

**Note:** *For compatible devices with built-in Qi wireless charging capability, the charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

**Note:** *Software and firmware updates to your device could affect the charging operation.*

Do not place items with a magnetic strip, for example passports, parking tickets or credit cards near the charging area when charging a device. This could damage the magnetic strip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins or keys on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance.

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER INDICATORS



Displays on the SYNC status bar when a device is charging.

# Wireless Accessory Charger

---

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Wireless charger active	Displays when wireless charging has started.
Charging terminated Phone misaligned or object between phone and charger detected. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Displays when wireless charging has stopped. Remove objects from the charging surface and place phone on center of charging surface.

## CUP HOLDERS

### CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS





**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.


Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.


# Starting and Stopping the Engine


## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm.
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



### Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

### Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

**Note:** *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

### RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

### STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.

2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

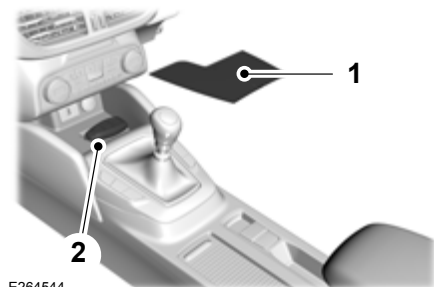
### OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



E264544

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp  
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

### Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

### Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 156).

# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

---

## WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Your vehicle has a 48 volt mild hybrid system.

It is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system cannot provide energy to the powertrain.

## HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The system uses regenerative charging during engine braking.

It switches the engine off when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set.

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

Regenerative charging results in a greater degree of engine braking.

Engine braking further increases following a brake pedal press. This is normal.

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system is charging the battery.



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is assisting the powertrain in driving the vehicle.



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is providing a large amount of energy to the powertrain to support a higher rate of acceleration.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## AUTO-START-STOP SETTINGS

### SETTING THE ENGINE STOP SPEED

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Rolling StartStop: Speed Threshold**.
4. Press a setting.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h or less.

**Note:** You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.

### Stopping the Engine in Neutral

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h or less.

**Note:** You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.

2. Press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

### Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

### Restarting the Engine in Neutral

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Select a gear.

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Shift into neutral.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Fully press the clutch pedal.

## AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch **MAX A/C** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 12 km/h or less.

**Note:** *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

### Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

# Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

---

## AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

---

## AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch **MAX A/C** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.



# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

## AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

# **Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)**

---

## **AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Can I permanently switch the system off?**

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### **Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?**

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

**Note:** *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

## **AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Can I permanently switch the system off?**

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### **Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?**

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

## FUEL QUALITY

### SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL



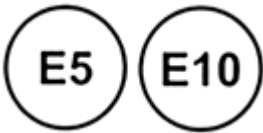
**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

# Fuel and Refueling



**WARNING:** Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment or in the spare wheel storage tray.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

### FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



# Fuel and Refueling



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 172).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

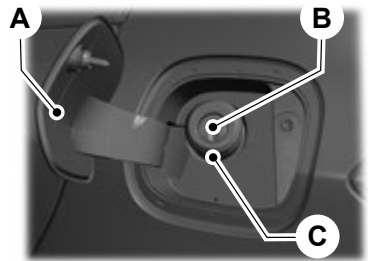
**Note:** If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L of fuel to restart the engine.

**Note:** You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

## REFUELING

### REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

### REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

# Fuel and Refueling

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

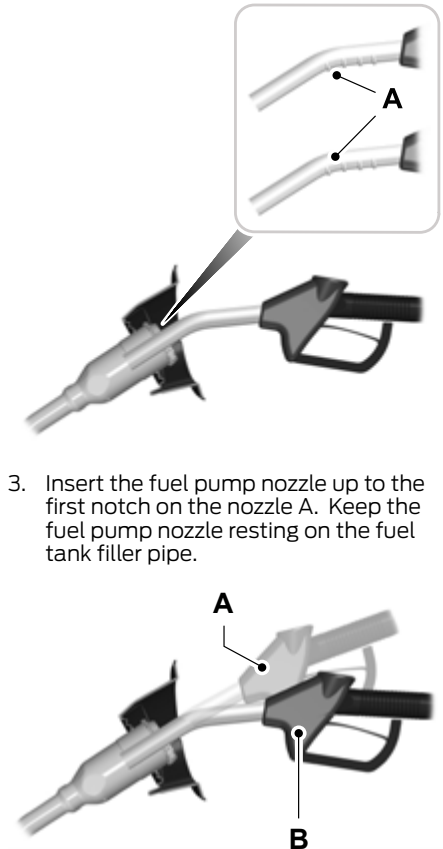
**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

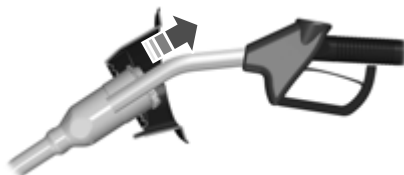
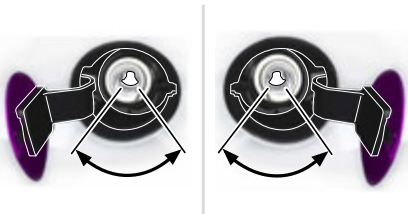
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



E139203

3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.
4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

## Fuel and Refueling



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

### FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Variant	Quantity
All.	52 L

## Fuel and Refueling

---

### FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

Variant	Quantity
All.	52 L

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

## FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

## FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel door open Close fully to avoid ""Check Engine"" light	A reminder to close the fuel door. Failure to follow this instruction can cause the check engine light to illuminate.
Refuel error See manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.

# Catalytic Converter

## WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 286).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 171).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

**Note:** *Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.*

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Gasoline Particulate Filter

## WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful particulates from the exhaust emissions.

## HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate or a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction indicator lamp.

# Gasoline Particulate Filter

---

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.</li><li>• Avoid prolonged engine idling.</li><li>• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.</li></ul>
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a moderate speed.</li><li>• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.</li><li>• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.</li></ul>



# Manual Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

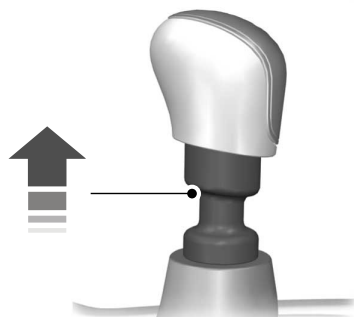
## SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.



## CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 189).

## CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

## **MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?**

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

# Automatic Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

### PARK (P)



**WARNING:** Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

**Note:** A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 286).

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown. See **Fuses** (page 295).

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

### REVERSE (R)



**WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

### NEUTRAL (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

### DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

### LOW (L) - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 280).

# Automatic Transmission

## MANUAL (M) - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 185).

**Note:** We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 280).

## SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



The transmission selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Rotate the outer ring to select a position.

**Note:** The position illuminates on the transmission selector.

3. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

**Note:** Your vehicle cannot shift from drive (D) to park (P) with a clockwise rotation. Your vehicle cannot shift from park (P) to drive (D) with a counter-clockwise rotation.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS



The instrument cluster displays the current position.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS



The instrument cluster displays the current position.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS



Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.



# Automatic Transmission

## MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

### SHIFTING USING THE PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear.

Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

**Note:** Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

### Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gear.

**Note:** We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.



Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

**Note:** Hold the right paddle for a few seconds to turn off the feature manually.

**Note:** The feature switches off if neither paddle is pulled within a short period of time.

### Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

**Note:** We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 280).



Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Shift into drive (D) to switch the feature off.

## STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE

### WHAT IS STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off.

For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

**Note:** You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you stay in your vehicle with power on.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

# Automatic Transmission

---

**Note:** *Automatic Return to Park is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode.*

## STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE PRECAUTIONS

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

## ENTERING STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** *An instructional message appears.*

5. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button.

**Note:** *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters this mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

**Note:** *The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.*

## EXITING STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power the vehicle on and shift to drive (D) or reverse (R).

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts to park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with the driver seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt with the driver door open.

**Note:** *Do not use Automatic Return to Park when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.*

### AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar sensor or seatbelt sensor are malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

# Automatic Transmission

## SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

**Note:** If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. See **Stay in Neutral Mode Precautions** (page 186).

### Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 192).

**Note:** If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.

5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Press the manual (M) or low (L) button.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

**Note:** You must complete this procedure within 20 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

### Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

### Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

# Automatic Transmission

---

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission too hot Press brake Transmission overheating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, leave the engine running and allow the transmission to cool. Wait until the message disappears.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Select M to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Select L to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in neutral mode engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.



# Brakes

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the stoplamps could flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers could also turn on when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 305).

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

# Brakes



**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 351).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 360).

## BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

## BRAKES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Check brake system	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## **BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?**

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### **There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?**

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

**Note:** *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 323).*

# Electric Parking Brake

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Power the vehicle off and remove the keys or remote control whenever you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could apply when the transmission selector is in park (P). See **Automatic Transmission** (page 183).

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

**Note:** If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

1. Pull the switch up and hold it.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

# Electric Parking Brake

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

## MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

### Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

**Note:** The electric parking brake also automatically releases if you shift into a gear and release the clutch pedal without pressing the accelerator pedal.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 286).

# Electric Parking Brake

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Brake System

**BRAKE**



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires

service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

#### Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

# Hill Start Assist

## WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist makes it easier for you to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without using the parking brake.

## HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope.

## HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Start Assist** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

## HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

## HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Displays when the system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Auto Hold

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto Hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop and release the brake pedal. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt before you switch the system on.



Press the button on the center console.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the system off before using an automatic car wash.

## USING AUTO HOLD - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 193).

**Note:** The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) and press the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) before the system is active.

## USING AUTO HOLD - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.



# Auto Hold

2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Pull away in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal.*

**Note:** *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 193).*

**Note:** *The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) and press the brake pedal.*

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) before the system is active.

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



**AUTO  
HOLD**

Illuminates when the system is active. Your vehicle remains stationary after you release the brake pedal.



**AUTO  
HOLD**

Illuminates when the system is on but unavailable to hold your vehicle at a standstill.

# Traction Control

## WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: ST



**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

**Note:** When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

**Note:** Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **What Is MyKey** (page 48).

## TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCLUDING: ST

## TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

# Traction Control

---

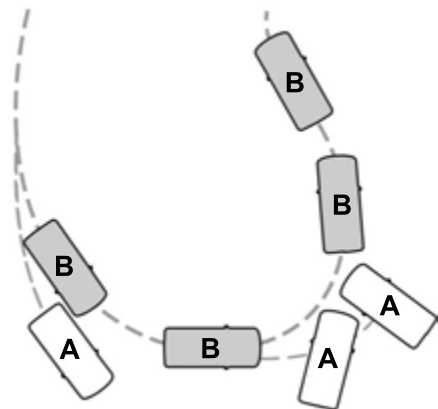
## TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.
Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck?	You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h.

# Stability Control

## WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: ST

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - ST



**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or use Sport, Track or Drift mode when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

## Reducing Stability Control

**ESC**

Press the button on the instrument panel. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

**Note:** Stability control only reduces and is not fully switched off.

**Note:** If you switch stability control to reduced mode, traction control turns off.

**Note:** Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **What Is MyKey** (page 48).

# Stability Control

## Switching the System Off

**ESC**

Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the system off. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

**Note:** If you switch stability control off, traction control also turns off

**Note:** Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **What Is MyKey** (page 48).

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR - ST



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

## STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING - ST

### STABILITY CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when you switch the system to reduced mode or off. It also illuminates if you select track mode.

## STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
ESC Sport mode	The status of the stability control system after you switched it to reduced mode.
ESC off	The status of the stability control system after you switched it off.
ESC on	The status of the stability control system after you switched it on.
Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck?	You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h.

# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** Some accessories such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See **What Is MyKey** (page 48).

We recommend that you take some time to get to know the system and its limitations by reading this section.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.



You can turn the system on or off by pressing the parking aid button. If your vehicle does not have a parking aid button, the system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 113).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

# Parking Aids



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** *Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.*

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** *When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the parking aids off. See MyKey™ (page 48).*

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to turn the system on and off.

The system can also be turned off using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the rear parking aid off.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm from the rear bumper.

# Parking Aids

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

## LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

## REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

### FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).



# Parking Aids

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

## LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

## FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** If the detected object is 30 cm or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.

## SIDE PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

### SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm from the sides of your vehicle.

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m above 30 km/h to reset the steering wheel angle information.

**Note:** If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

# Parking Aids

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

## LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

## SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

## PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

# Parking Aids

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

## PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Action
Park Pilot malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

# Rear View Camera

## WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

## LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA



E249202

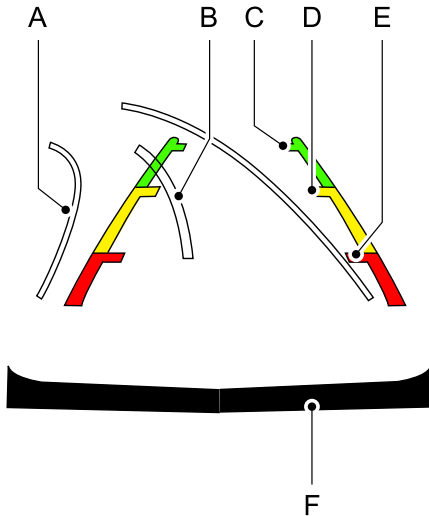
The rear view camera is on the liftgate.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**WARNING:** Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

**Note:** Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

# Rear View Camera



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

### ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Rear View Camera

---

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Rear View Camera**.
4. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

# 180 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA

The 180 degree camera provides an extended image of the area behind your vehicle.

## HOW DOES THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

When you switch the 180 degree view on, the view splits into three images. You can use the right and left outer images when reversing to check for cross traffic and pedestrians.

When you use the 180 degree camera view, objects behind your vehicle are shown extremely stretched and do not appear as actual ratio.

## 180 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

**Note:** *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects.*

**Note:** *Guide lines do not appear when you switch the 180 degree view on.*

## SWITCHING THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

When you shift to reverse (R) and the rear view camera image appears, press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen to switch the 180 degree view on. Press the button again to switch it off.

The 180 degree view turns off when you shift into park (P) or into any forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.

**Note:** *Whenever you shift to reverse (R) the standard rear view camera image with guidelines is the default view.*

## 180 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

---

### **Automatic Camera View Change (If Equipped)**

When you shift to reverse (R) and the system detects an approaching vehicle, it automatically activates the 180 degree camera view.

When the intended path is free of cross traffic, the camera automatically switches back to the view before.

Press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen during a cross traffic event to temporarily switch the automatic camera view change off.

**Note:** *When you shift to reverse (R) again the automatic camera view change is reactivated.*



# Active Park Assist

## WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

## SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

## Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, shift out of neutral (N).

## Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause parking assistance at any time, release the parking aid button.

If you open the passenger or rear doors, active park assist pauses.

To resume parking, press and hold the parking aid button again.

## ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

**Note:** The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.

1. Press the active park assist button.

**Note:** The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.

2. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

# Active Park Assist

---

3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
6. Press and hold the active park assist button.
7. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

**Note:** When parallel parking between objects, the system will park closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to the luggage compartment.

## ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the active park assist button.

**Note:** The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.

2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

**Note:** When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

## ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

**Note:** Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.

**Note:** Active park assist backs your vehicle into parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button twice.
2. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m away from and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** A tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster when active park assist finds a parking space.

4. Press and hold the brake pedal.

# Active Park Assist

---

5. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
6. Press and hold the active park assist button.
7. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

**Note:** *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

**Note:** *When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.*

**Note:** *Active park assist aligns the front end of your vehicle with the lane side of the object next to it.*

**Note:** *When only one object is detected, the system allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*

## ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the active park assist button twice.
2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).

6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

**Note:** *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

**Note:** *When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.*

**Note:** *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

**Note:** *When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*

## EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the turn signal lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
5. Release the parking brake.
6. Press and hold the active park assist button.
7. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move.

**Note:** *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

**Note:** *After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

# Active Park Assist

## EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the turn signal lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
4. Follow the instructions on the information display.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

#### Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

You have switched traction control off.

#### Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

#### Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.

#### Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.

# Active Park Assist

---

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

The parking space is more than 1.5 m or less than 0.5 m away from your vehicle.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h for perpendicular parking.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The parking space length, or position of parked objects, changes after your vehicle passes the space.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

# Cruise Control

## WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

### Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

## SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

### Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

## SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press either the SET+ or SET- buttons to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The indicator changes color in the information display.

### Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press the SET+ button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET+ button to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**SET-**

Press the SET- button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET- button to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

# Cruise Control

---

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** *The system remembers the set speed.*

**Note:** *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

## CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

## When Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

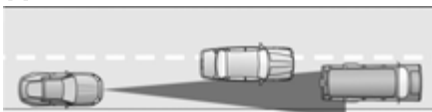
**Note:** *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 232).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

## Detection Issues Can Occur:

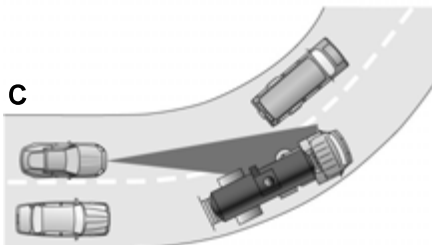
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 218).

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

**Note:** If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

## Manually Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

**SET-**

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the required speed.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Adaptive Cruise Control



E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

## Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

**SET-**

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

**RES**

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED

**CAN**

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

**Note:** The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED

**RES**

Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal**.

## LANE CENTERING

### HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses radar and camera sensors to help keep your vehicle in the middle of the lane by applying continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center on highways.

**Note:** The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

**Note:** The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.

**Note:** If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

## LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 220).

## LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go on.
- You have your hands on the steering wheel at all times.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- The vehicle is centered in the lane.

**Note:** If it does not detect valid lane markings, the system stays inactive until valid markings are available.

## LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 221).

Lane Centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- Limited steering torque input is applied.
- Areas under construction or new infrastructure.
- When modifications to the steering system have been made.
- When using a spare tire.
- In high wind conditions.

**Note:** The driving assistance torque is limited and may not be sufficient for all driving situations such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.

**Note:** In exceptional conditions, such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line or could cancel.

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel. See **Visual Search** (page 26).



Press the button.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

**Note:** *The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 229).*

## LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 230).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** *The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

## LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system slows the vehicle while maintaining steering control.

**RES**

If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must contribute to the steering control and press and release the button or briefly press the accelerator pedal to regain full system performance.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings are crossed.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

**Note:** *The system disables until the next key cycle if your vehicle slows down due to driver inactivity twice within a key cycle.*

You initiate a cancellation when the system is active and you switch the turn signal lamp on. The system immediately cancels. The system remains in standby mode as long as the turn signal lamp is engaged. The system automatically re-activates once the vehicle is centered in a lane and the turn signal lamp is switched off.

## LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display when you switch lane centering on. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Green indicates the system is active and applying steering torque assistance input to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber with an audible tone and then gray indicates a system automatic cancellation.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

### HOW DOES INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition and navigation map data with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system detects new speed signs, the set speed updates.

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. The intelligent adaptive cruise control system and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 271).

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

## SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Intelligent**.

## ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Intelligent**.
5. Press **Tolerance**.
6. Use the slider bar to adjust the allowable tolerance for the system.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



E265663

If you select this mode, a bracket appears around the set speed and the detected speed limit sign in the instrument cluster display.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES – VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

**Note:** The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise control not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise control not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive cruise control malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

---

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

**Note:** The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Keep hands on steering wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering assist conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Resume control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

---

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise control Speed sign recognition not available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Drive Mode Control

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, gear shifting, handling and powertrain response.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - EXCLUDING: ST

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.



You can press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - ST

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.



You can press the button on the steering wheel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.



Press the button on the steering wheel to directly turn sport mode on and off.

## DRIVE MODES

### ECO - EXCLUDING: ST



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

### NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

**Note:** *This is the default mode each time you switch the ignition on.*

### SLIPPERY



Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

### SPORT - EXCLUDING: ST



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

**Note:** *Auto-start-stop could switch off when you select this mode.*

### SPORT - ST, MANUAL TRANSMISSION



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

**Note:** *Press the button on the steering wheel to directly select this mode.*

**Note:** *Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.*

### SPORT - ST, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

# Drive Mode Control

**Note:** Press the button on the steering wheel to directly select this mode.

**Note:** Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

**Note:** The seventh gear is disabled when you select this mode.

## TRACK - ST, MANUAL TRANSMISSION



Vehicle settings suited for track driving.

**Note:** Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

**Note:** Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Lane keeping system is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Track mode is not intended for use on public roads.

**Note:** Stability control is switched to reduced mode when you select this mode.

## TRACK - ST, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



Vehicle settings suited for track driving.

**Note:** Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

**Note:** Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Lane keeping system is disabled when you select this mode.

**Note:** Track mode is not intended for use on public roads.

**Note:** Stability control is switched to reduced mode when you select this mode.

**Note:** The seventh gear is disabled when you select this mode.

## TRAIL - ACTIVE/VIGNALE



Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

**Note:** Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



## WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

## HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

**Note:** *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

**Note:** *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

## HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

## VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

## VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Eco coach**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as four colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

**Note:** *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

## VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.

### **VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN**

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Eco behaviour**.
4. Select the screen on your main screen.  
See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 116).

# Efficient Drive Mode

---

## WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that uses the vehicle navigation data. It provides predictive route information to help you drive more efficiently by indicating when you can release the accelerator pedal.

## SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

## SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Eco coach**.
4. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

## DISPLAYING THE EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**

## TRIP SUMMARY

### HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for your driving behavior, acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

**Note:** *The compliance score assesses how well you follow the efficient drive mode indicator.*

**Note:** *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

## VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Press the **OK** button.

# Efficient Drive Mode

---

## VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.

The button is on the center console.

1. Select **ECO**.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Display settings**.
4. Select **Eco coach**.
5. Switch **Eco advice** on.
6. Switch the engine off.

## EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS



It illuminates grey when the system recommends you to decelerate.

It changes color when you start to decelerate.

The additional display ring next to the efficient drive mode indicator can provide information about speed limit, intersection, freeway ramp, roundabout, stop sign, slope, curve or crosswalk.

# Speed Limiter

## HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

## SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

**LIM**

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

## SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

**LIM**

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

## SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

**SET-**

## CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

**SET+**

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

**SET-**

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

**CAN**

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

**Note:** The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

# Speed Limiter

---

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING



Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

**Note:** *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the set speed limiter.

## INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the **RES** button.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

## SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

## SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

# Intelligent Speed Limiter

## WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

## HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

**Note:** The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

**LIM**

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

## SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

**LIM**

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

# Intelligent Speed Limiter

## SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

**SET+** Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

**Note:** If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

## CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

**SET+** You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

## ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limiter**.
4. Press **Intelligent Speed Limiter**.
5. Press **Tolerance**.
6. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

**CAN** Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

**Note:** The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

**LIM** Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

**Note:** The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

**RES** Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

## INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you press the **RES** button.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.



# Intelligent Speed Limiter

---

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limiter**.
4. Switch **Intelligent Speed Limiter** off.

**Note:** If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

# Lane Keeping System

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.



**Note:** The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the direction indicator on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h.
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



Press the button on the turn signal stalk.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Lane-Keeping Mode**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the three modes in the instrument cluster display:

- Alert mode.
- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey, the mode is set to alert.*

## ALERT MODE

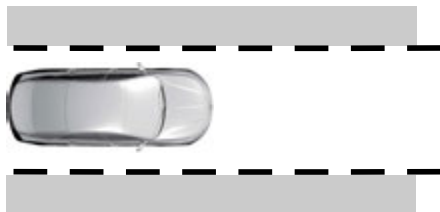
### WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode provides steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

# Lane Keeping System

---

## HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel if it detects an unintended lane departure.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Lane-Keeping Intensity**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

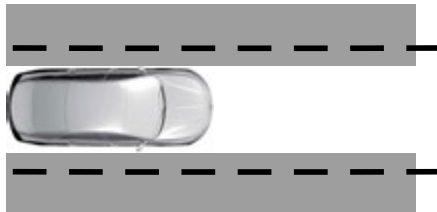
**Note:** This setting does not affect the aid mode.

## AID MODE

### WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

## HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

**Note:** When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

**Note:** The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

## ALERT AND AID MODE

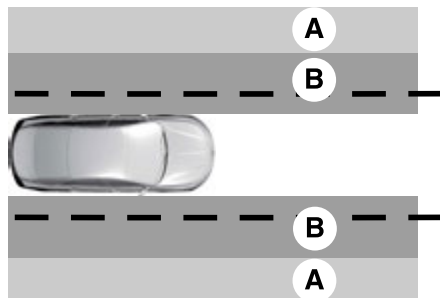
### WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode combines both, alert mode and aid mode.

### HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.

# Lane Keeping System



A Alert.

B Aid.

**Note:** The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

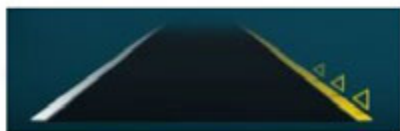
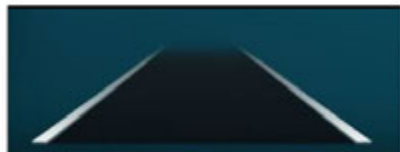


It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on and aid mode or alert and aid mode are selected.



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on and alert mode is selected.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.

The lane markings illuminate green or white if the system is available.

The lane markings illuminate grey if the system is unavailable.

The lane markings do not display if the system is off.

# Lane Keeping System

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM, VEHICLES WITHOUT: TRAILER TOW

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



E270719

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the turn signal stalk.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

**Note:** *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

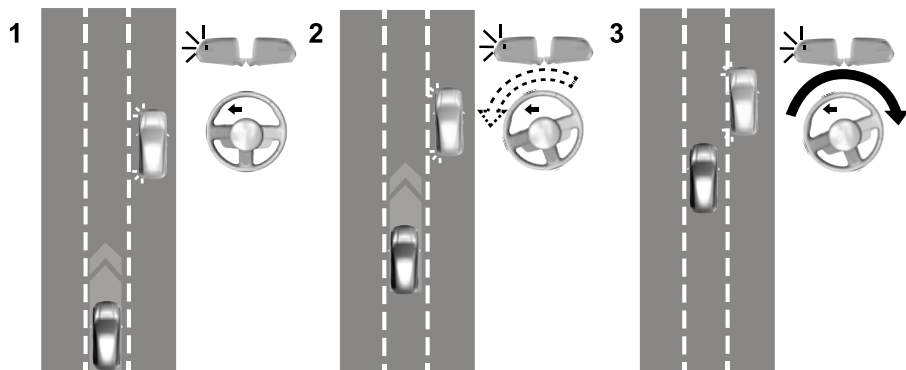
**Note:** *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

# Lane Keeping System

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 255).

## Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Lane Keeping System

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM/ TRAILER TOW

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

**Note:** When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 257).

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



E270719

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the turn signal stalk.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist with trailer coverage detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of the vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of the trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 257).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 257).

**Note:** Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

**Note:** The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.

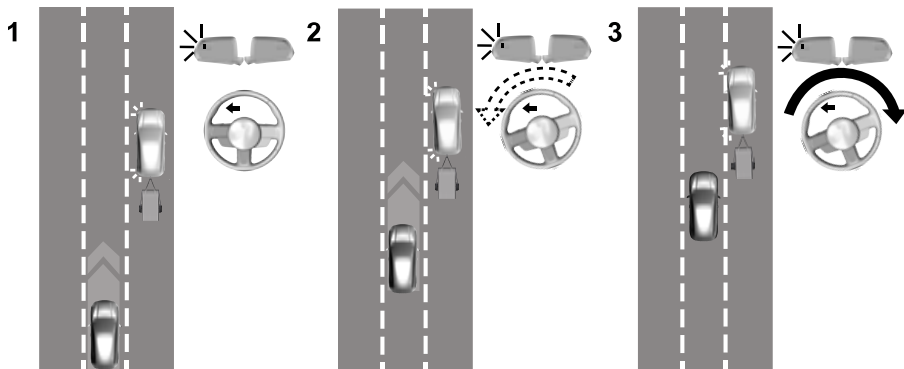


# Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 255).

# Lane Keeping System

## Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Information Messages

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m, and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m to your vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage</b> (page 257).
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

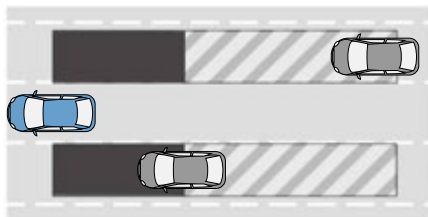
# Blind Spot Information System

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

**Note:** The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

# Blind Spot Information System

---

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h.

**Note:** The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h.

**Note:** The system does not operate in reverse (R).

## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

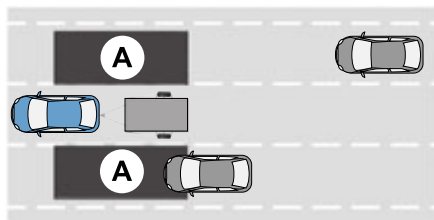
**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

# Blind Spot Information System

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



E293525

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h.

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

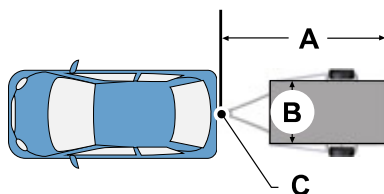
**Note:** The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

## SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



E293526

- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

# Blind Spot Information System

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m, and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer BLIS** and follow the instructions on the screen.

**Note:** Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.

**Note:** If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m. Cross Traffic Alert remains on.

## SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.

3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

**Note:** The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.

# Blind Spot Information System

---

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Cross Traffic Alert

## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

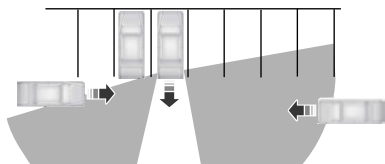
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

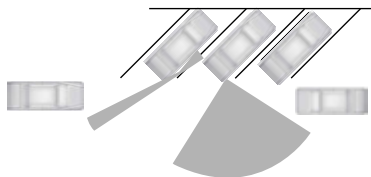
## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 6 km/h and 60 km/h. Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.



# Cross Traffic Alert

- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h or greater than 60 km/h.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h.
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

## SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

**Note:** The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m.
- You set the trailer length to 1 m in the center display.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

# Cross Traffic Alert

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and turn signals appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

**Note:** *If the turn signals do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – WARNING LAMPS



If the system malfunctions, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of turn signals when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians in the road ahead of you, or who could cross the vehicle's path, and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system is active when your vehicle reaches a speed greater than approximately 5 km/h. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.



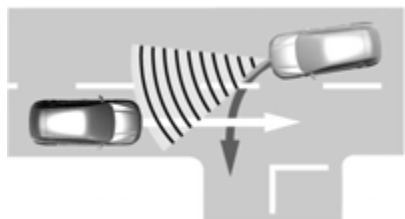
If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. The system is active at speeds up to 130 km/h.
Automatic emergency braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system could apply brakes if you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 30 km/h.



## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

**WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

**WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

## Pre-Collision Assist

The system is not designed to detect vehicles that are traveling in a different direction.

### LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

### LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



E244279

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## DISTANCE INDICATION

### WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

**Note:** *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

### DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m.	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m.	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m.	Less than 0.6 seconds.

## DISTANCE ALERT

### WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

**Note:** *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.

### SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

# Pre-Collision Assist

3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

### WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

**Note:** Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 264).

### EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

### SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on each time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates when the system is not available.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message could display.**

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.



# Driver Alert

## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h.

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 4

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

**Note:** The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

# Driver Alert

---

**Note:** *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

## RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.

# Speed Sign Recognition

## WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit.

## HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

**Note:** Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

# Speed Sign Recognition

---

## SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system

by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Sign Recognition**.
4. Press **Speed Warning**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Traffic Sign Recognition

## WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

## HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected traffic signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

**Note:** *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

**Note:** *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.

# Traffic Sign Recognition

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they are grayed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

## SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

## SETTING THE TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system by a certain speed tolerance.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
4. Press **Speed Warning**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Load Carrying

## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

## ROOF RACK

### ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



**WARNING:** Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

# Load Carrying

## ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or use Sport or Track mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

**Note:** *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

## ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 75 kg.

## TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

### TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES

Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 282).

Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.

If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 60 kg.

Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.



# Luggage Compartment

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

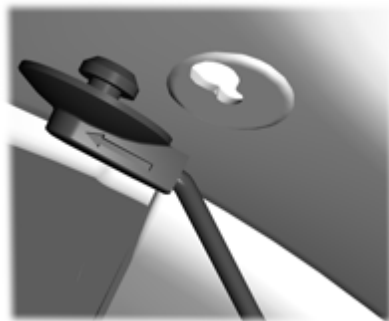
**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not load any objects on the shelf that may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of the vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.

**Note:** When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

## INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

To remove the luggage cover:



E266421

1. Gently push the retaining clip up and remove it.
2. Raise the luggage cover.
3. Pull the luggage cover backward.

# Luggage Compartment

---

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

### LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

### LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



E132901

## CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

**Note:** *Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have travelled 80 km.*

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.


Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.


**Note:** *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*


Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.


# Towing a Trailer


## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** Only use the Ford approved trailer wiring kit (including the trailer wiring module) when towing with your vehicle. Using generic trailer wiring kits may prevent the correct operation of the rear parking sensors (where fitted) and could damage the electrical systems of your vehicle.


 **WARNING:** Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross combination mass stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.


Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behaviour to the load of the trailer.

## TRAILER BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

# Towing a Trailer

---

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 750 kg when loaded.

## TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m, you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 361).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

## LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability.

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 10% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

**Note:** *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

## TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

## LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.

Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.

# Towing a Trailer

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.

## TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

### RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

**Note:** Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

**Note:** There are legal limits for maximum towing weights. This may vary according to the region in which your vehicle is operated. Check the local laws and regulations before towing a trailer.

Engine	Maximum Trailer Weight kg	Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight kg
1.0L EcoBoost	1,400 kg	140 kg
2.3L EcoBoost	1,400 kg	140 kg

# Driving Hints

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C.

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km. During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km in town and for the first 1,600 km on freeways.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.

- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

## Driving Hints



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

### FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.



## Driving Hints

---

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

**Note:** *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



**WARNING:** If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

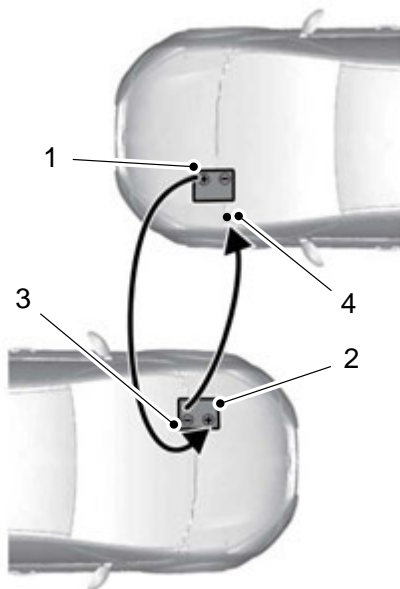
## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

**Note:** *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information



E142664

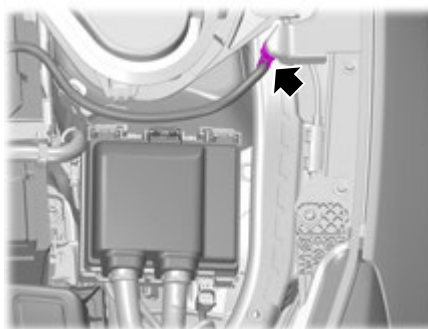
Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.

1. Connect the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the assisting battery.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Make the final connection of the negative jumper cable to the ground point.



5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and press the accelerator gently to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
7. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on and to intermittently sound the horn in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

## SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch or the unlock button on the remote control to switch the system off.

**Note:** *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

## POST IMPACT BRAKING

### HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed in order to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

### POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

## OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

## POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS



It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

### AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

## RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RECOVERY TOWING

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT

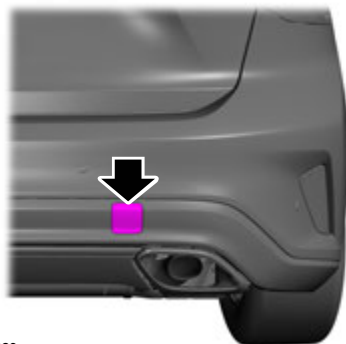


E265228

1. Gently press and release the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.
2. Gently pull it straight out.

**Note:** The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

### ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT



E265229

1. Gently press the top of the towing eye attachment point cover inward.
2. Gently lift it upward and then pull it straight out.

**Note:** The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

### LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the spare wheel storage tray.

**Note:** You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



**WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



E265230

1. The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.
2. Install the towing eye.

**Note:** It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

## FAIL-SAFE COOLING

### WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

## HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

**Note:** Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

# Crash and Breakdown Information



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

## FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

# Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

---

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



**WARNING:** Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



**WARNING:** Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

**Note:** Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle backward.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C.

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h.
- Maximum distance is 80 km.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.



### **TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS**

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

# Emergency Equipment

---

## **STORING A FIRST AID KIT**

You can store the first aid kit in the luggage compartment.

## **STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE**

You can store the warning triangle in the luggage compartment.

# Fuses

## FUSE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

### LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



E265225

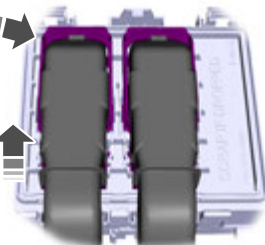
## ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



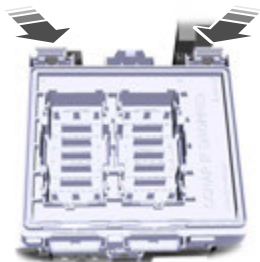
3



E253689

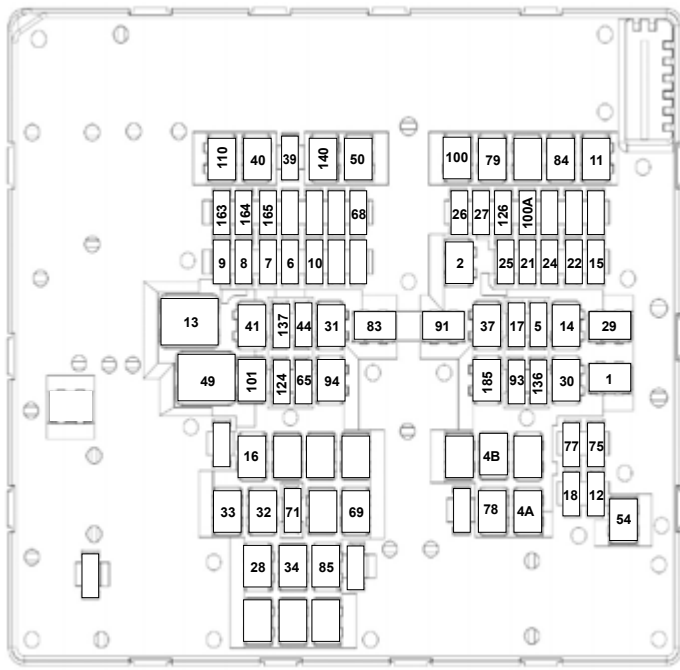
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

## Fuses



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

### IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



## Fuses

---

Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
4A	20 A	Fuel pump - diesel.
4B	20 A	Fuel pump - gasoline.
5	10 A	Data link connector.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
	15 A	Powertrain control module.
7	10 A	Powertrain control module.
8	15 A	Powertrain control module.
9	20 A	Powertrain control module.
10	10 A	Powertrain control module.
11	30 A	Starter motor.
12	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
14	20 A	Auxiliary heater control module.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	20 A	Rear window washer pump.
17	5 A	Lumbar assembly.
18	20 A	Headlamp washer pump.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
22	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module.
25	10 A	Front parking aid camera. Rear view camera. Blind spot information system. Reverse gear.
26	15 A	Transmission control module - diesel. Transmission control module - mHEV.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
27	10 A	Electronic stability control.
28	40 A	Electronic stability control valve.
29	60 A	Electronic stability control pump.
30	25 A	Driver power seat.
31	25 A	Passenger power seat.
32	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
33	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
34	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
37	20 A	Moonroof.
39	15 A	Transmission module power.
40	60 A	Transmission module power.
41	30 A	Power liftgate.
44	10 A	Stoplamp switch.
49	60 A	Cooling fan.
50	30 A	Heated back light.
54	20 A	Electronic limited slip differential - gasoline.
65	20 A	Transmission control module - diesel.
	5 A	Battery electronic control module - gasoline.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wipers.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper.
75	10 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor - gasoline.
77	10 A	Heated front washer.
78	40 A	Left-hand heated windshield element.
79	40 A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
83	40 A	Auxiliary heater.

# Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
84	60 A	Auxiliary heater.
85	40 A	Auxiliary heater.
91	40 A	Trailer tow module.
93	5 A	Headlamps.
94	20 A	Heated seats.
100A	5 A	Headlamp control module.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamp assembly power.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamp assembly power.
110	30 A	Water-in-fuel sensor - diesel. Diesel fuel heater.
124	5 A	Rain sensor.
126	5 A	Dosing control unit - diesel.
136	15 A	Amplifier.
137	15 A	Amplifier.
140	60 A	Glow plugs - diesel.
163	15 A	Dosing control unit pressure line heater.
164	10 A	Reductant dosage control module.
165	15 A	Tank heater - diesel.
185	20 A	Power windows. Moonroof.

## INTERIOR FUSE BOX

### LOCATING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

#### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse box is below the glove compartment.

## Fuses

### Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box - 5-Door and Wagon



E267033

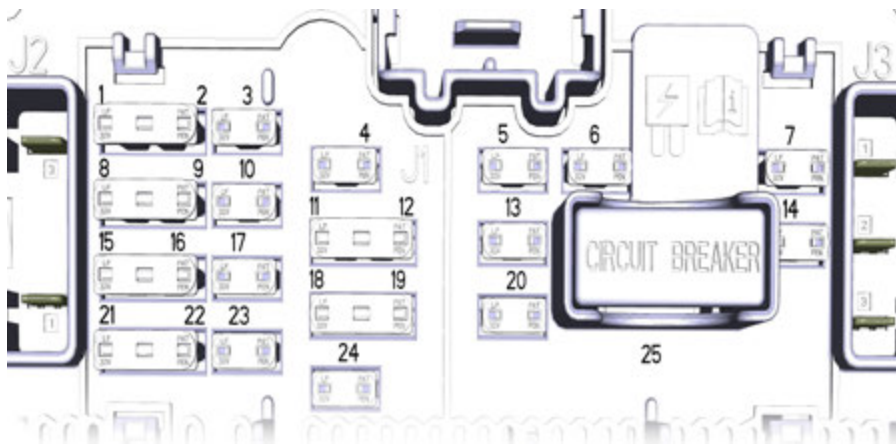
The fuse box is in the luggage compartment on the right-hand side.

### ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

1. Fold back the carpet under the glove compartment.
2. Carefully remove the cover.

### IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

#### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E249945



# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
3	10 A	Parking assist control module.
4	10 A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
5	20 A	Central locking system.
6	10 A	Moonroof.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Not used (spare).
9	5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Auto-dimming interior mirror. Front parking aid camera.
10	10 A	Head up display module. Wireless accessory charging module.
11	5 A	Telematics modem.
12	5 A	Combined intrusion and inclination sensor.
13	15 A	Fuel filler door release switch. Double lock. Child lock. Relay feed.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
16	15 A	Adaptive damping module.
17	15 A	Integrated control panel. SYNC 3 module. SYNC 4 module. Display module.
18	7.5 A	Power liftgate module. Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
19	7.5 A	Battery back-up sounder. Fuel fired booster heater.

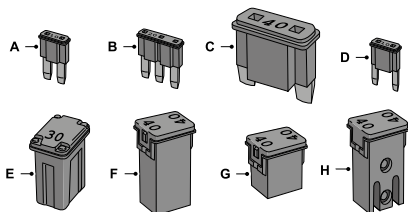
# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
20	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Steering wheel module. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Not used (spare).

## Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box - 5-Door and Wagon

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	15 A	Ignition system.

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A	Micro 2.
B	Micro 3.
C	Maxi.
D	Mini.
E	M Case.
F	J Case.

G	J Case Low Profile.
H	Slotted M Case.

## FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

#### When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

#### How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

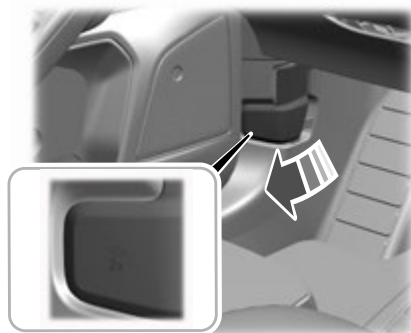
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 351).

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

**Note:** *This action releases the hood latch.*

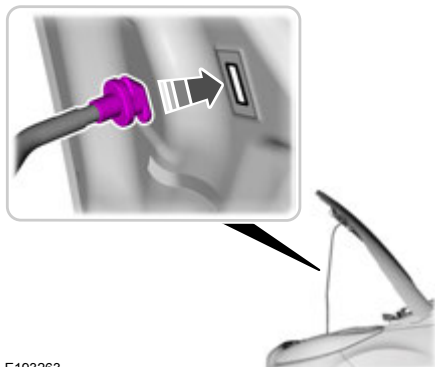
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

**Note:** *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

**Note:** *There is no secondary latch under the hood.*

# Maintenance



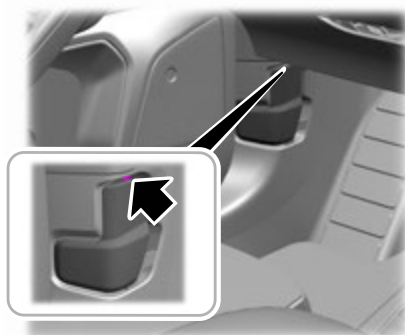
E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

**Note:** Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

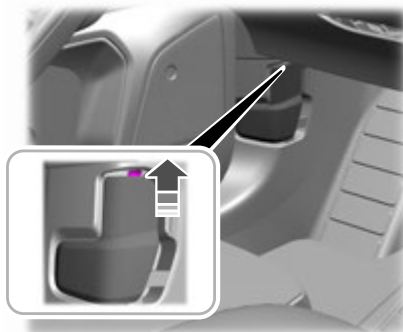
## Opening the Hood if the Passenger Door cannot be Opened

1. Unlock the right-hand front door using the key and access the left-hand front footwell. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 54).



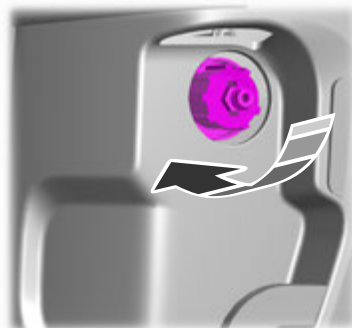
E263801

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown.



E263802

3. Gently pry the hood release lever securing clip upward.



E263803

4. Use a suitable tool, for example a hexagonal socket, and turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Let the hood release mechanism completely retract.
6. Turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance for a second time.

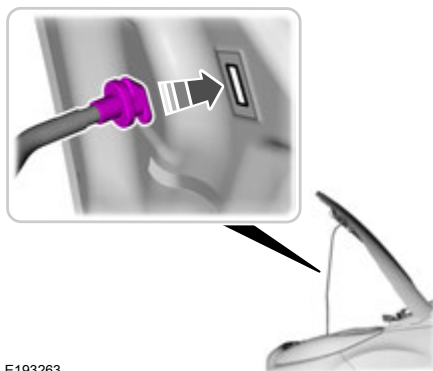
**Note:** This action releases the hood latch.

**Note:** This action fully releases the hood.

# Maintenance

7. Open the hood.

**Note:** There is no secondary latch under the hood.



E193263

8. Support the hood with the strut.

**Note:** Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

9. Reinstall the hood release lever. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure the hood release lever securing clip is fully engaged.

## Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm.

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

## Warning Lamps and Indicators



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

## Information Messages

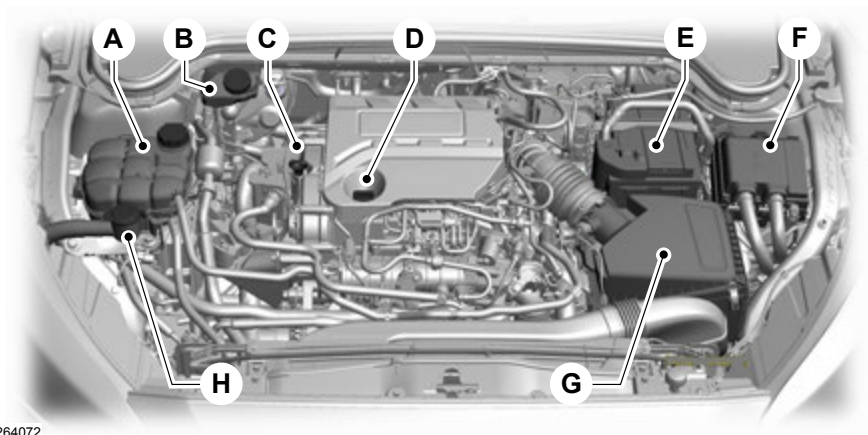
Message	Action
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

## UNDERHOODOVERVIEW-1.0L ECOBOOST™

**Note:** Your vehicle may not include an engine cover.

# Maintenance

---

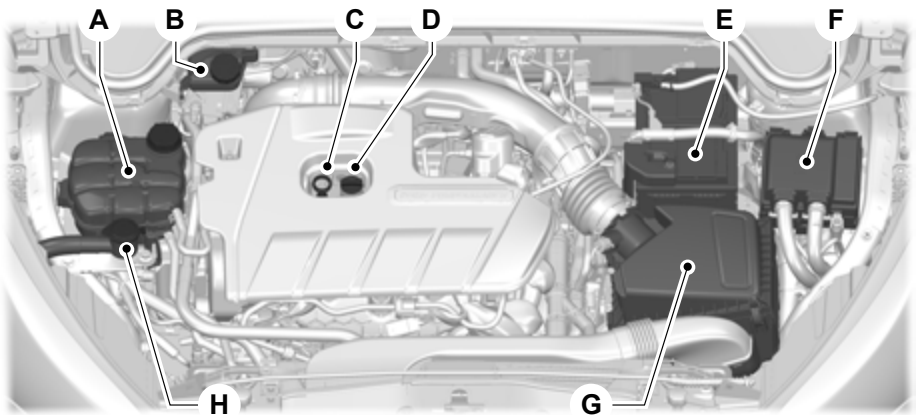


E264072

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 310).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 189).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 308).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 308).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 314).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 295).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



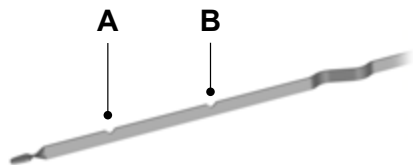
E294377

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 310).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 189).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 308).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 308).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 314).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 295).
- G Air filter.
- H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL

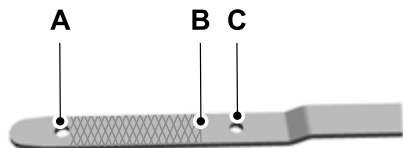
### ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

### ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

## CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warming up and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.

## ADDING ENGINE OIL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 351).



# Maintenance

4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

## RESETTING THE ENGINE OIL CHANGE REMINDER - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Oil life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## RESETTING THE ENGINE OIL CHANGE REMINDER - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Oil life**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## ENGINE COOLING FAN



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

## COOLANT

### COOLANT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.




**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.




**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

# Maintenance

## CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

 **WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.


When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.


**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.


**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C and -37°C. Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## ADDING COOLANT

 **WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 351). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

# Maintenance

---

**Note:** *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 351). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

**Note:** *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 351).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

## MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

# Maintenance



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



**WARNING:** If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 290).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

## COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See <b>Checking the Coolant Level</b> (page 310).

# Maintenance

## 12V BATTERY

### 12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

### WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

### HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

# Maintenance

---

## BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

**Note:** *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

## Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 303).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.

# Maintenance

5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 100).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Replacing the Battery

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

## RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

**Note:** *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## 12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### 12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

# Maintenance

## 12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See <b>Jump Starting the Vehicle</b> (page 286). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.



# Maintenance

## EXTERIOR BULBS

### EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs do not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front turn signal lamp.	LED.	-
Daytime running lamp.	LED.	-
Headlamp low beam.	LED.	-
Headlamp high beam.	LED.	-
Front fog lamp.	LED.	-
Mirror turn signal lamp.	LED.	-
Rear lamp. <sup>1</sup>	W5W	5
Stoplamp. <sup>2</sup>	P21W	21
Stoplamp. <sup>3</sup>	W16W	16
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
Rear turn signal lamp. <sup>2</sup>	PY21W	21
Rear turn signal lamp. <sup>3</sup>	WY16W	16
Rear fog lamp.	LED.	-
Reversing lamp.	LED.	-
License plate lamp.	LED.	-

<sup>1</sup> Rear lamps are also available as LED lamps.

<sup>2</sup> Halogen rear lamps.

<sup>3</sup> LED rear lamps.

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

# Maintenance

## REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY



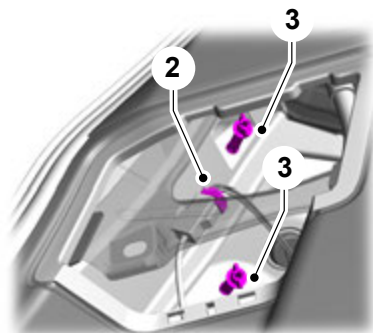
**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

### Stoplamp, Rear Lamp and Rear Turn Signal Lamp



E264497

1. Carefully remove the luggage compartment trim panel.

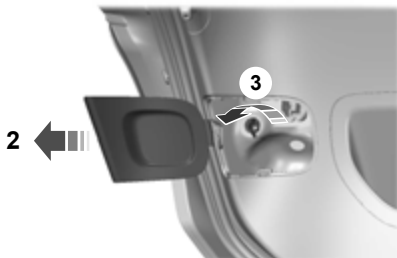


E264498

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the wing nuts that secure the lamp assembly.
4. Remove the lamp.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

### Reversing Lamp and Rear Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.



4. Remove the lamp.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB



**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



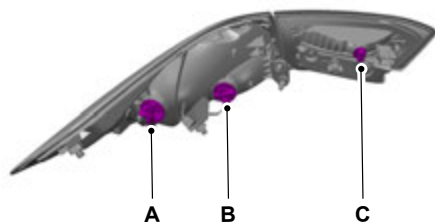
**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 317).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 318). See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 318).

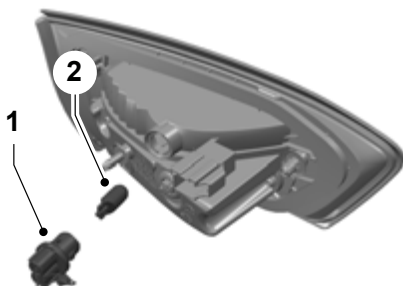
**Note:** Rear lamps are also available as LED lamps.

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Rear lamp.

## Replacing a Rear Lamp Bulb



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB



**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



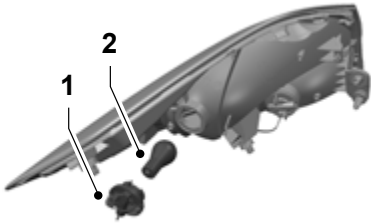
**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 317).

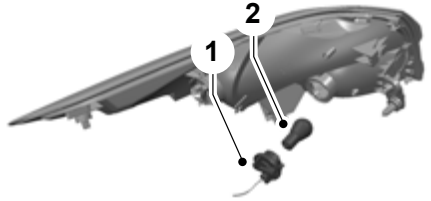
You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 318).

# Maintenance

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



**WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 317).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 318).

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

### TRACK USE PRECAUTIONS

Before using your vehicle on a track, check the engine oil level. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 308).

Maintain the engine oil level at or near the maximum mark on the engine oil dipstick when using your vehicle on a track.

## WHAT IS LAUNCH CONTROL

Launch control is an electronic driving aid that helps to deliver a fast acceleration when you pull away from a standstill.

## LAUNCH CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

Make sure that there are no pedestrians, objects or traffic in front of your vehicle.

## LAUNCH CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Launch control does not operate when the transmission is in reverse or if the engine has not reached normal operating temperature.

## SWITCHING LAUNCH CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Switch **Launch control** on or off.

**Note:** *The system remains on until you switch it off or you switch the ignition off.*

## USING LAUNCH CONTROL

1. Bring your vehicle to a stop with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
2. Switch **Launch control** on. See **Switching Launch Control On and Off** (page 322).
3. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into first gear.
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** *The system brings the engine to the optimum speed.*

5. Quickly and fully release the clutch pedal in a single movement.

## LAUNCH CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates in the information bar when you switch the system on.

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

### CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Rinse the area well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

## CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

## CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa.
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C.

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

## CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

## CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.



# Vehicle Care

**Note:** Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

## CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

## CLEANING FABRIC



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING LEATHER



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING VINYL



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## CLEANING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

**Note:** The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.

### REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

### WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

# Wheel and Tire Information

## USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

## USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 330). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 332). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 333).

## USING SNOW CHAINS - EXCLUDING: ACTIVE/ST



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 205/60R16.
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm.
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 8 mm for five spoke steel wheels.

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 330).

## Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 198).

**Note:** *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

# Wheel and Tire Information



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 215/55R17.
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm.

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 330).

## Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 198).

**Note:** *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 215/50R17.
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm.

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 333).

## Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 200).

**Note:** *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

# Tire Care

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 330).

## INFLATING THE TIRES



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

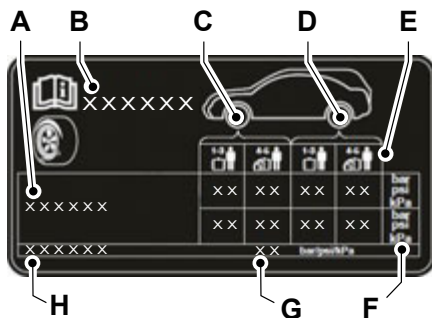
Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

## TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - EXCLUDING: ACTIVE/ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** *Checking the tire pressure of the spare wheel could require removing it from the spare wheel well.*



E254218

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.

# Tire Care

F Measure unit.

G Spare wheel tire pressure.

H Spare wheel tire size.

## Up to 160 km/h

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	psi (kPa)	psi (kPa)	psi (kPa)	psi (kPa)
205/60R16	260	260	260	310
215/50R17	230	230	250	280
235/40R18	230	210	250	280

## Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
205/60R16	260	260	260	310
215/50R17	230	230	260	290
235/40R18	230	210	250	290

## Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	kPa
T125/70R16	420
T125/80R16	420

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

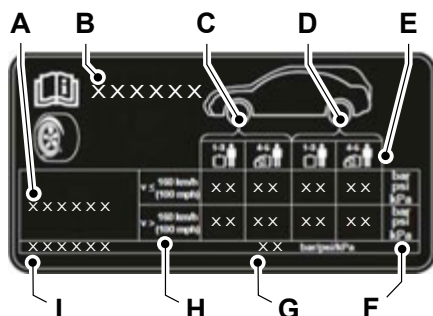
# Tire Care

## TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - ACTIVE

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** Checking the tire pressure of the spare wheel could require removing it from the spare wheel well.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

## Up to 160 km/h

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
215/55R17	230	230	240	280
215/50R18	230	230	250	280



# Tire Care

## Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
215/55R17	230	230	240	280
215/50R18	230	230	250	280

## Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	kPa
T125/70R16	420
T125/80R16	420

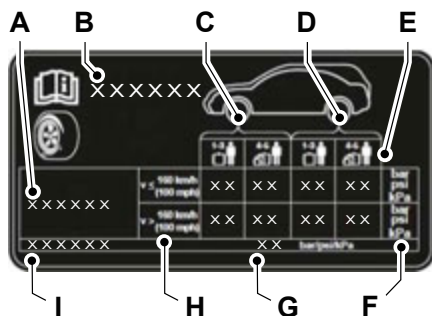
Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

## TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** Checking the tire pressure of the spare wheel could require removing it from the spare wheel well.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.

# Tire Care

- |   |                      |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| C | Front tire pressure. | G | Spare wheel tire pressure.       |
| D | Rear tire pressure.  | H | Intended constant vehicle speed. |
| E | Vehicle load.        | I | Spare wheel tire size.           |
| F | Measure unit.        |   |                                  |


## Up to 160 km/h

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
215/50R17	230	230	240	240
235/40R18	240	240	240	240
235/35R19	240	240	270	270

## Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
215/50R17	270	240	290	300
235/40R18	240	240	250	260
235/35R19	270	240	290	300

## Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

 **WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	kPa
T125/70R17	420

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

# Tire Care

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismantled and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



**WARNING:** Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

## TIRE ROTATION



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

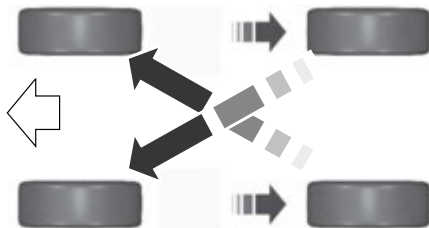
**Note:** If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.

**Note:** If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

**Note:** Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

### Non-directional tires



# Tire Care

---

## Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km and 10,000 km.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h to reach a tire service location.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

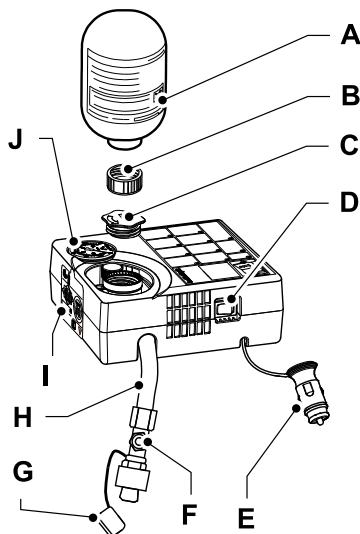
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

## LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is in the luggage compartment.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



- A Sealant bottle.
- B Bottle cap.
- C Sealant bottle access cap.
- D Power switch.
- E 12 volt DC power point connector.
- F Pressure release valve.
- G Protective cap.
- H Tire inflation pipe.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- I Warning Label.
- J Pressure gauge.

**Note:** Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

## USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



**WARNING:** Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

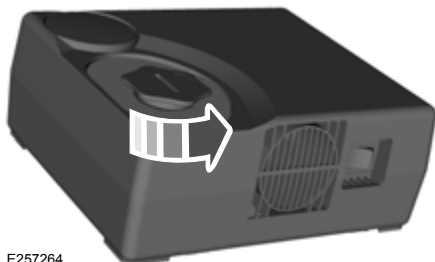
1. Check for a punctured tire.

**Note:** Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



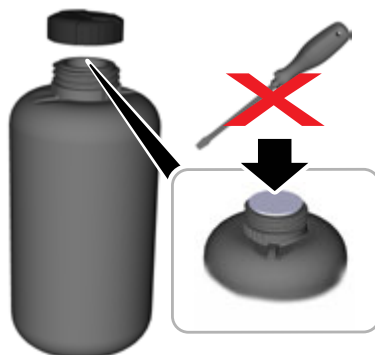
E257263

2. To temporarily repair a punctured tire, release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

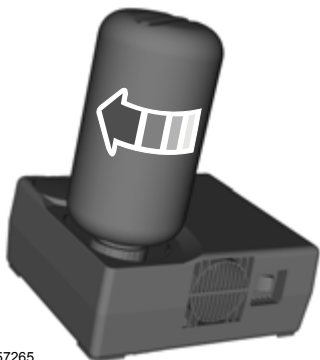
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.



E256963

4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.

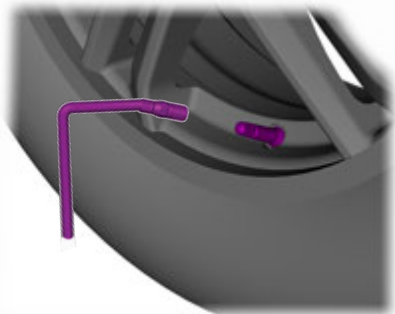
# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.



E257006

6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257022

7. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Power Outlet** (page 147).
8. Start the engine.



E257266



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

9. Switch the compressor on.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257121



**WARNING:** Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

10. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar.

**Note:** If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

11. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar, switch the compressor and the ignition off.
12. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

**Note:** Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

13. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
14. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.



E257942

15. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km. Do not exceed 80 km/h.



E257121

16. After driving between 3–10 km, stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 330). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 332). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 333).



# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

---

**Note:** *If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

**Note:** *If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar, use the kit to inflate the tire again.*

## After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

**Note:** Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

**Note:** After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h for the warning lamp to turn off.

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

### VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES- VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.

### RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

**Note:** If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Tyre pressure**.
4. Select **Reset**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

### RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

**Note:** If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Tyre pressure**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly underinflated	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Specifications</b> (page 330). See <b>Tire Pressure Specifications</b> (page 332). See <b>Tire Pressure Specifications</b> (page 330). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

---

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tyre pressure low	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Changing a Road Wheel

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



**WARNING:** Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as the your vehicle road wheels, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner. We recommend that you have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheels, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

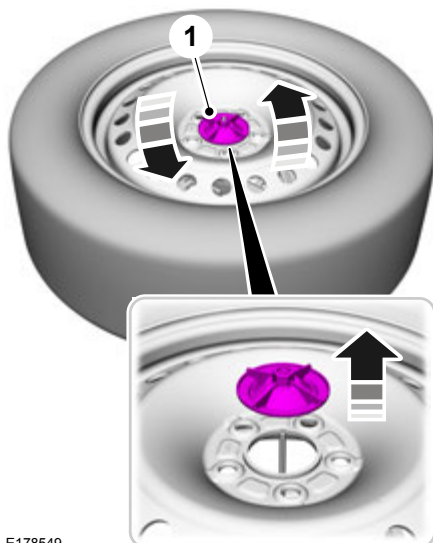
**Note:** *Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.*

**Note:** *The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.*

**Note:** *If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.*

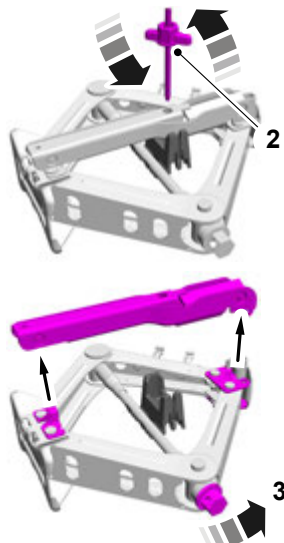
The spare wheel, vehicle jack, towing eye, wheel nut tool and wheel trim remover are in the luggage compartment under the floor covering or in the side panel.

## Changing a Road Wheel



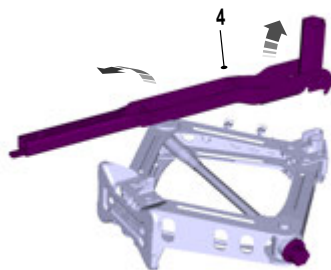
E178549

1. To remove the spare wheel, vehicle jack and wheel nut tool, turn the securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.



E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw counterclockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and wheel nut tool from the vehicle jack.



E245204

# Changing a Road Wheel

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the wheel nuts.
5. If you have wheel trim, use the hook on the vehicle jack handle and wheel nut tool to remove the wheel trim.



E269166

**WARNING:** Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.

**WARNING:** The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

**WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

**WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

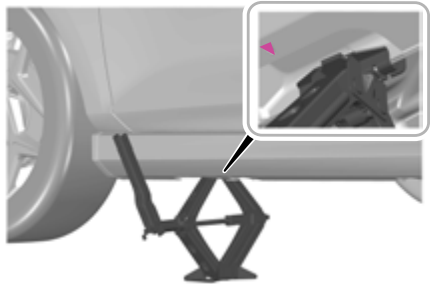


**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

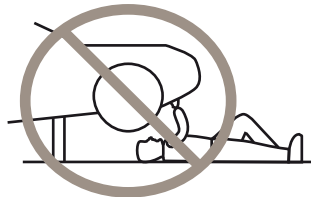


**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

6. Locate the vehicle jacking points. Small arrow-shaped marks indicate the locations.



7. Carefully position the vehicle jack onto the vehicle jacking point.

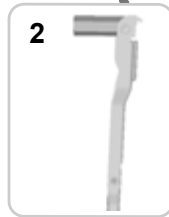
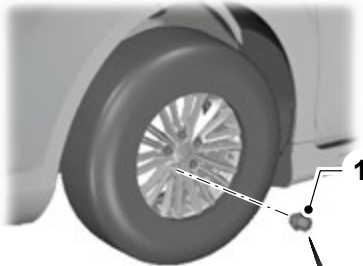


8. Place the hexagonal end of the vehicle jack handle and wheel nut tool onto the vehicle jack.



## Changing a Road Wheel

9. Turn the vehicle jack handle clockwise to raise the vehicle without lifting the wheel off the ground.





E181745


10. If your vehicle has locking wheel nuts, install the locking wheel nut tool and loosen the locking wheel nut first.
11. Loosen the wheel nuts.
12. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
13. Remove the wheel nuts and the wheel.

**Note:** Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground. This may damage the paint.

 **WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

 **WARNING:** Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

 **WARNING:** When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

# Changing a Road Wheel

14. Inspect the wheel pilot bore (A) and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.
15. Install the wheel.
16. Install the wheel nuts finger tight.

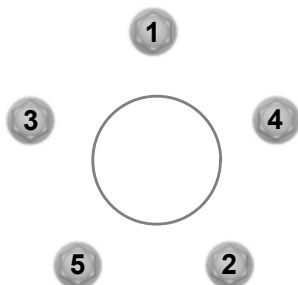
**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.



**WARNING:** Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Nm
135

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.



E75442

17. Partially tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown
18. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
19. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 350).
20. Carefully install the wheel trim.

## WHEEL NUTS



**WARNING:** Only use the specific wheel nuts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Dimension Description	Dimension
Bore.	71.9 mm
Stroke.	82 mm
Capacity.	999 cm <sup>3</sup>
Compression ratio.	10:1
Firing order.	1-2-3
Fuel type.	95 RON Octane

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

Dimension Description	Dimension
Bore.	87.5 mm
Stroke.	94 mm
Capacity.	2,294 cm <sup>3</sup>
Compression ratio.	10:1
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Fuel type.	95 RON Octane

# Capacities and Specifications

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

We recommend Motorcraft engine oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use engine oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	4.5 L

**Note:** The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1 L.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20 - Synthetic Blend	WSS-M2C960-A1

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.5 L of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

## Capacities and Specifications

### ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

We recommend Motorcraft engine oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use engine oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

#### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.3 L

**Note:** The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to nominal is 0.85 L.

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30 - Synthetic Blend	WSS-M2C961-A1

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.5 L of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

### COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	52 L
Vehicles with smaller fuel tank.	42 L

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	52 L



# Capacities and Specifications

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

### Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.53 kg	120 cm <sup>3</sup>

### Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-134A	WSH-M17B19-A
Refrigerant Oil	WSH-M1C231-B

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

### Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.575 kg	100 cm <sup>3</sup>

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-134A	WSH-M17B19-A
Refrigerant Oil	WSH-M1C231-B

## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Windshield Washer Fluid	WSS-M14P19-A

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.65 L <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Gear/Transmission Fluid - SAE 75W	WSS-M2C200-E1

# Capacities and Specifications

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.325 L <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid 75W MX	WSS-M2C955-A1

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11 L <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C949-A, MERCON® ULV

**Note:** Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® ULV transmission fluid should only use MERCON® ULV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.

## Capacities and Specifications

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.25 ± 0.1 L <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid F-DC	WSS-M2C218-A1/A2

### BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

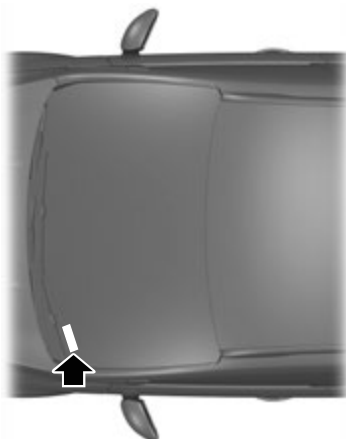
**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

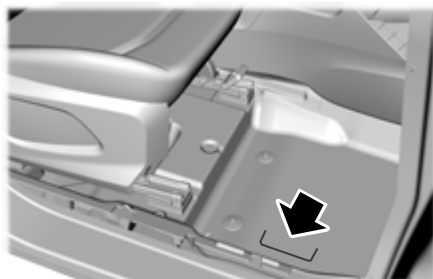
### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E163915

On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E163913

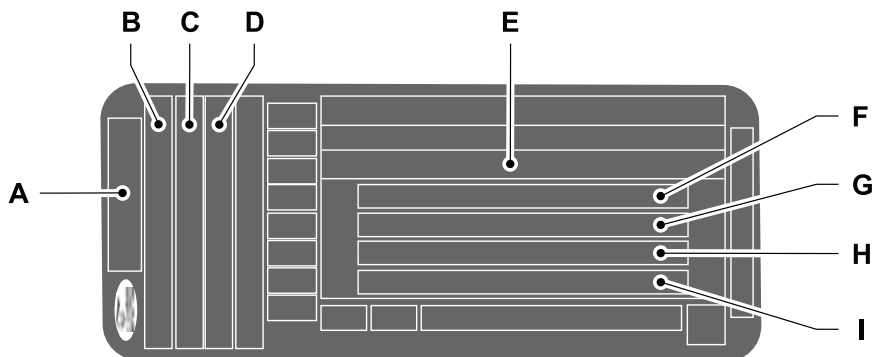
Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



# Vehicle Identification

---

- A Model.
- B Variant.
- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.
- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

**Note:** *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

**Note:** *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

## ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

## CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Manage Wi-Fi Networks**.
4. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
5. Press **View Available Networks**.
6. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

# Connected Vehicle

---

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?**

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

#### **Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?**

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

#### **Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

#### **What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?**

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

#### **Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?**

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

#### **Why do software downloads take too long?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.



**Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?**

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

## PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

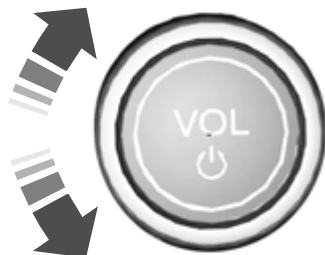


Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

**Note:** Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.

**Note:** The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

## SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

**Note:** A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

## MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

**Note:** The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.

# Audio System

---

**Note:** The mute button is also available on the steering wheel control.

## SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

## SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

### Balance and Fade (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Balance/Fade**.
4. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

### Tone Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Tone Settings**.
4. Press the arrows or slider bar to adjust the settings.

### Speed Compensated Volume

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Adaptive Volume**.
4. Press a setting.

### Occupancy Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **DSP Occupancy**.

4. Press a setting.

### Sound Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Sound Mode**.
4. Press a setting.

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Set the time.

**Note:** The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

### Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

## AM/FM RADIO

### AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

# Audio System

## SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION

### Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

**Note:** *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

### Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

### Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

**Note:** *Station list is only available for FM.*

## SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



## DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

### WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

### DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

**Note:** *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

## SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

### Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

**Note:** *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

### Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

## Audio System

---

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

### Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

# Center Display Overview - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

## CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

### Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, some features are not available while the vehicle is in motion at or above 8 km/h. Settings that are not critical while driving your vehicle are shown as restricted on your display. Some of these settings include:

- Software updates.
- Personal profiles setup.
- Valet mode setup.
- Driver assistance settings.

### Vehicle Settings

- MyKey setup.
- Door keypad code setup.
- Backup start passcode setup.

These restricted features become available when your vehicle is no longer in motion.

## STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

### Audio System



Audio system muted.

### Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

### Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.

## Center Display Overview - Vehicles With: SYNC 4



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

### Vehicle Software Update



Vehicle software update available.



Vehicle software update requires schedule.



Vehicle software update requires consent.



Vehicle software update requires Wi-Fi.



Vehicle software update schedule reminder.



Vehicle software update not successful.



Vehicle software update successful.

### Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

### INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.



Press the button to view the next card.



Press the button to view the previous card.



Press the button to view available cards.

## WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

## SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

## BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel.

## VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

### General Examples

Command	Result
Start Over.	The system resets the current voice interaction.
Cancel.	The system ends the current voice interaction.
Next Page.	The system goes to the next page.
Previous Page.	The system goes to the previous page.
Help.	The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen.

### Entertainment Examples

Command	Result
Play The Beatles.	The system plays the selected music.
Show music by The Beatles.	The system shows the selected music.
Tune to FM 101.9.	The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM.
Set the station to Sirius Channel 2.	The system tunes the radio to Sirius Channel 2.



## Voice Interaction - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

---

### Climate Examples

Command	Result
Set the temperature to low.	The system sets the temperature to the minimum.
Set the temperature to 22°C.	The system sets the temperature to 22°C.

### Phone Examples

Command	Result
Call Henry.	The system calls Henry using your connected device.
Dial (phone number).	The system dials the selected phone number.
Send a text message to Henry.	The system begins a dictated text message.
Read my message from Henry.	The system reads you the most recent message from Henry.

### Apps Examples

Command	Result
Mobile Apps.	The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system.
List Mobile Apps.	The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	The system will search and connect to compatible apps running on your mobile device.

### Navigation Examples

Command	Result
Say the address that you're looking for, like 'The Queen's Walk, London'.	The system begins guided navigation to the address.
Where is ____	The system searches for the requested point of interest.
Show me directions to Oakwood Boulevard and Pelham Road.	The system shows directions to the selected intersection.
Cancel route.	The system ends guided navigation to the destination.

# Phone - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

---

## PHONE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

### Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

### Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

### Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

**Note:** Up to 12 devices can be stored.

### Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

### Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

### Voice Control

Say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

**Note:** *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

# Phone - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

## MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

### Making Calls

**To call a number in your contacts, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your recent calls, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your favorites, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

### Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

**To accept the call, select:**

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

**To reject the call, select:**

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

### During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

## Phone - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

---

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Handsfree off	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to the touch-screen.

### SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

### SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

#### ios

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

#### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Connectivity**.
4. Press **Bluetooth**.
5. Press **Add a Bluetooth Device**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

6. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

7. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.
4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

# Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

## APP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **MOBILE APPS** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

**Note:** Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

**Note:** The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** For troubleshooting assistance press **Compatible Apps List** under **Mobile Apps Help**.

## ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **MOBILE APPS** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.
3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

**Note:** Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

**Note:** The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Access the system applications.
6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **MOBILE APPS** are enabled.

**Note:** For troubleshooting assistance press **Compatible Apps List** under **Mobile Apps Help**.



### SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

#### Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.*

#### Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

#### Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

#### Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Apple CarPlay**.

### SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

#### Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

#### Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.*

#### Disabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

#### Re-Enabling Android Auto

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Android Auto**.

# Navigation - Vehicles With: SYNC 4

---

## ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the homescreen.

**Note:** *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

## NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

**Note:** *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to [www.here.com/mapcreator](http://www.here.com/mapcreator).*

## ADJUSTING THE MAP

### ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

### CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

**Note:** *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

## LIVE TRAFFIC

### WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

### SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Connected Navigation** on or off.

**Note:** *Switching off this feature disables all features of the **Connected Navigation**.*

## SETTING A DESTINATION

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.

**Note:** Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.

3. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the pin.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

**Note:** Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

**Note:** Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

## WAYPOINTS

### ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

### EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

## ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

### REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

### CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

### UPDATING THE VEHICLE SYSTEMS WIRELESSLY



Software Updates allow you to update your vehicle system software wirelessly. To make sure you receive all updates, set a recurring schedule and connect to Wi-Fi. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 363). Updates may take longer if not connected to Wi-Fi, or may not download at all. Multiple connections may be required to complete a download.

#### Enabling Software Updates

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **System Updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic Updates** on.

**Note:** *Software Updates are enabled by default.*

**Note:** *If you do not want to receive Software Updates you can turn them off. You will not be notified of new updates.*

#### Scheduling an Update

Scheduling an update allows you to set a convenient time for the update to complete. We recommend updating overnight when your vehicle is not in use.

Make sure your vehicle is connected and **Automatic Updates** is enabled.

Once you complete these steps, your schedule will be saved for future updates. As long as an update is not in process you can adjust your schedule.

**Note:** *Some updates may be applied outside of your set schedule. Information about the unscheduled update appears on the touchscreen after it is applied.*

#### Using the Settings Menu

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **System Updates**.
3. Press **Schedule Updates**.
4. Use the controls to set the time and day of the update.
5. Save the schedule.

**Note:** *You can set the updates to occur at any time.*

#### Using the Status Bar Icon



When an update is available, tap the notification icon and follow the prompts on the screen.

Additional Software Update icons may appear on the status bar. See **Status Bar** (page 370).

#### Applying a Software Update

You can see the progress of the update on the touchscreen. An update cannot be canceled once it has been started.

During scheduled updates you will not be able to drive your vehicle, start the vehicle, use remote controls to lock and unlock the vehicle. The alarm, central locks, and door tones are disabled. The electronic door lock will not function during an update. You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on. Pull the handle until it stops to use the mechanical latch. Some updates may not allow you to use your vehicle during the update process.

**Note:** *Some updates can complete in the background, but more complex updates can take up to 45 minutes.*

**Note:** *Double locking is switched off and central locking is switched on during and after an update.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle is plugged in, charging will stop during an update and resume when the update is complete.*

### Software Update Requirements

If certain requirements are not met during a scheduled update, the update will be postponed. You can update your schedule if you want to retry the update sooner. The requirements for the update are as listed:

- Your vehicle is not running.
- Your vehicle is stopped.
- Your vehicle is parked.
- The hazard indicators are switched off.
- The alarm is not sounding.
- The doors are closed.
- The parking lights are switched off.
- You are not pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is not in progress.
- The Stop Safely lamp is not illuminated. See **Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps** (page 108).

### Viewing Update Information

If an update is successful, the touchscreen will provide additional details or statuses about the update.

**Note:** You can also access this information under the **System Updates** tile.

If an update is not successful, follow the prompt that appears on the touchscreen.

## PERFORMING A MASTER RESET

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.
4. Press **Master Reset**.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

# Customer Information

---

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

# Customer Information

---

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

### Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

# Customer Information

---

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.



# Customer Information

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

## **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

# Customer Information

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

# Customer Information

---

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

## Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

# Customer Information

---

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

# Customer Information

---

## **Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

## Customer Information

---

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

# Customer Information

---

## 1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

# Customer Information

---

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENNAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENNAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENNAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY



# Customer Information

---

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

# Customer Information

---

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

## 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

## 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

### 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

# Customer Information

---

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## **9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### **Terms and Conditions**

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

# Customer Information

---

**PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT.** Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

# Customer Information

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal  
government agency, or any federal official  
refuses to use the legend provided herein,  
the Contracting Officer, federal  
government agency, or any federal official  
must notify HERE prior to seeking  
additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User  
Terms for any Application containing  
Data for the United States shall contain  
the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license  
from the United States Postal  
Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4®  
information.”

“©United States Postal Service®  
20XX. Prices are not established,  
controlled or approved by the United  
States Postal Service®. The following  
trademarks and registrations are  
owned by the USPS: United States  
Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provi-  
sions apply to the Data for Canada,  
which may include or reflect data from  
third party licensors (“Third Party  
Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen  
in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”),  
Canada Post Corporation (“Canada  
Post”) and the Department of Natural  
Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client  
agrees that its use of the Third Party  
Data is subject to the following provi-  
sions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data  
is licensed on an “as is” basis. The  
licensors of such data, including Her  
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,  
make no guarantees, representa-  
tions or warranties respecting such  
data, either express or implied,  
arising by law or otherwise, including  
but not limited to, effectiveness,  
completeness, accuracy or fitness  
for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third  
Party Data licensors, including Her  
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,  
shall not be liable: (i) in respect of  
any claim, demand or action, irre-  
spective of the nature of the cause  
of the claim, demand or action  
alleging any loss, injury or damages,  
direct or indirect, which may result  
from the use or possession of such  
Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of  
revenues or contracts, or any other  
consequential loss of any kind  
resulting from any defect in the  
Data.

# Customer Information

---

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved!"

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

# Customer Information

---

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
-----------	--------

Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
-----------	---

Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
---------	--

Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”
---	---

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
---------	--------

Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.
--------	--

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

# Customer Information

---

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice



# Customer Information

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"	Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"	Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"	Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"	VI. Australia Territory	
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."	A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:	
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."	Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).	
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."		
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"		
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"		

# Customer Information

---

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

# Customer Information

---

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## **VII. China Territory**

### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### ***Limited Warranty***

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

# Customer Information

---

## ***Customer Remedies***

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## ***No Other Warranty:***

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## ***Limited Liability:***

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## ***Export Control***

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## ***IP Protection***

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## ***Entire Agreement***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

# Customer Information

---

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

# Customer Information

---

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## ***Taiwan Territory***

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

# Customer Information

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

### 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

### 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **"Suppliers"**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

## Customer Information

---

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

### **7. Please Note**

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.



## Appendices

### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

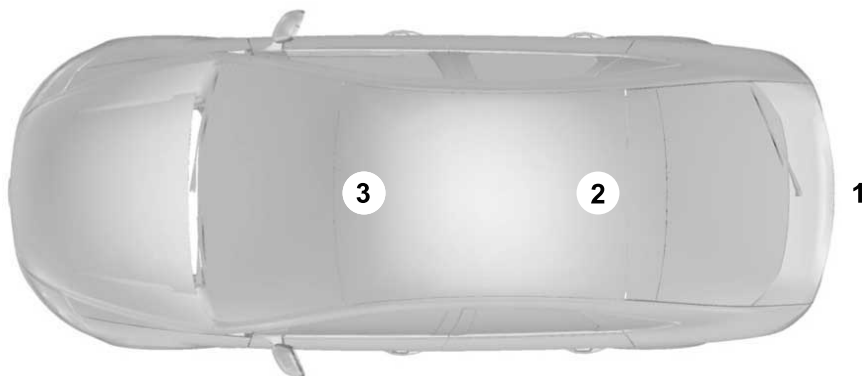


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

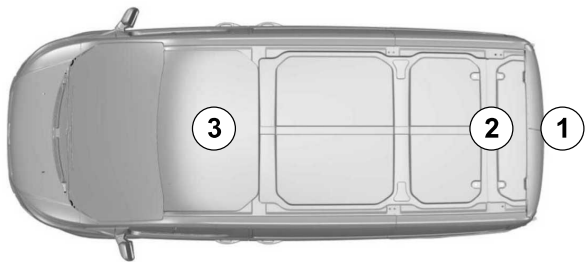
#### Car/SUV



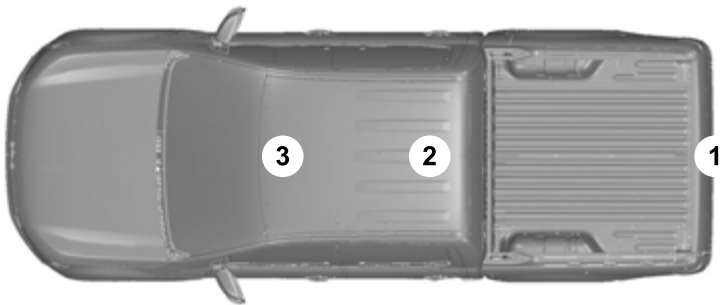
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



## Appendices

---

<b>Frequency Band MHz</b>	<b>Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)</b>	<b>Antenna Positions</b>
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3



## 1

12V Battery.....	313
12V Battery Precautions.....	313
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	314
Changing the 12V Battery.....	314
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	313
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	315
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	315
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	313
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	315
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	316
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	315
180 Degree Camera.....	211
180 Degree Camera Precautions.....	211

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	126
About This Publication.....	17
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	189
Accessing Navigation.....	382
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position.....	156
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	118
Active Park Assist.....	213
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....	216
Active Park Assist Precautions.....	213
Active Park Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	216
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	216
Active Park Assist – Information	
Messages.....	216
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	220
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	232
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise	
Control.....	231
Lane Centering.....	228

Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control.....	223
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	223
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	228
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	221
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Precautions.....	220
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	232
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information	
Messages.....	232
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	92
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting	
Work.....	92
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the	
Left or Right-Hand Side of the	
Road.....	94
Adaptive Front Lighting –	
Troubleshooting.....	94
Adaptive Front Lighting – Information	
Messages.....	94
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	103
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness.....	95
Adjusting the Map.....	382
Changing the Format of the Map.....	382
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	382
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	36
Adjusting the Seatbelts During	
Pregnancy.....	35
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	367
Adjusting the Speed Limit	
Tolerance.....	244
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	76
Adjusting the Volume.....	366
Aid Mode.....	248
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	248
What Is Aid Mode.....	248
Airbag Locations.....	41
Airbag Precautions.....	40
Airbags.....	39
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	42
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	42
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	42

# Index

Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	42	App Requirements.....	380
Air Conditioning		Apps.....	380
See: Climate Control.....	126	Audio System.....	366
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		AM/FM Radio.....	367
Specification – 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	357	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	368
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		Audio System Precautions.....	366
Specification – 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	357	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	102
Alert and Aid Mode.....	248	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	248	Limitations.....	102
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	248	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior	
Alert Mode.....	247	Mirror.....	102
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration		Auto Hold.....	196
Intensity.....	248	Auto Hold Indicators.....	197
How Does Alert Mode Work.....	248	Autolamps.....	85
What Is Alert Mode.....	247	Autolamp Settings.....	85
AM/FM Radio.....	367	What Are Autolamps.....	85
AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	367	Automatically Releasing the Electric	
Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station.....	368	Parking Brake – Automatic	
Ambient Lighting.....	96	Transmission.....	193
Switching Ambient Lighting On and		Automatically Releasing the Electric	
Off.....	96	Parking Brake – Manual	
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	189	Transmission.....	193
Anti-Lock Braking System		Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	288
Limitations.....	189	Automatic Crash Shutoff	
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	72	Precautions.....	288
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	73	Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	288
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm		What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	288
System.....	73	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	266
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System		Switching Automatic Emergency Braking	
Work.....	72	On and Off.....	266
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	72	What Is Automatic Emergency	
What Are the Interior Sensors.....	72	Braking.....	266
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	72	Automatic Engine Stop.....	155
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	73	How Does Automatic Engine Stop	
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	72	Work.....	155
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	73	Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	155
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	73	Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and	
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	74	Off.....	155
What Are the Alarm Security Levels.....	73	Automatic High Beam Control.....	87
What Is Ask on Exit.....	73	Automatic High Beam Control	
Appendices.....	413	Indicators.....	88
Applying the Electric Parking Brake -		Automatic High Beam Control	
Automatic Transmission.....	192	Limitations.....	88
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an		Automatic High Beam Control	
Emergency.....	192	Precautions.....	87
Applying the Electric Parking Brake -		Automatic High Beam Control	
Manual Transmission.....	192	Requirements.....	88
App Precautions.....	380		

# Index

How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	87
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	88
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	88
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	89
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	89
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	186
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations.....	186
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work.....	186
What Is Automatic Return to Park (P).....	186
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	187
Automatic Transmission.....	183
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	186
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	183
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	188
Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters.....	185
Stay in Neutral Mode.....	185
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	360
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	359
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters.....	184
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters.....	184
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	183
Drive (D).....	183
Low (L).....	183
Manual (M).....	184
Neutral (N).....	183
Park (P).....	183
Reverse (R).....	183
Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	183
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters.....	184
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	188
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	188
Auto Mode.....	128
Auto Mode Indicators.....	128
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	128
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	129
Autorelock.....	58
How Does Autorelock Work.....	58
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	160
Auto-Start-Stop.....	159
Auto-Start-Stop Settings.....	159
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	160
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	160
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	159
Auto-Start-Stop Settings.....	159
Setting the Engine Stop Speed.....	159
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	160
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	161
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	160
Autounlock.....	57
Autounlock Requirements.....	57
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	57
What Is Autounlock.....	57
Autowipers.....	79
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	79
Autowipers Settings.....	79
What Are Autowipers.....	79
Auxiliary Heater.....	131
Auxiliary Heater Indicators.....	131
Auxiliary Heater Precautions.....	131

## B

Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	372
Blind Spot Assist - Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System, Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow.....	250
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	251
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	250
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	250

# Index

What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	250
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	
- Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System/Trailer Tow.....	252
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	253
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	252
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	252
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	252
Blind Spot Information System.....	255
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	258
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	257
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	258
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	255
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	255
Blind Spot Information System Requirements – Automatic Transmission.....	256
Blind Spot Information System Requirements – Manual Transmission.....	256
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	258
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	258
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....	258
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	257
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	257
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....	257
Selecting a Trailer.....	258
Setting a Trailer Length.....	257
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	257
Bluetooth®.....	379
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	303

Booster Seats.....	32
Brake Fluid Specification.....	190
Brake Over Accelerator.....	189
Brake Precautions.....	189
Brakes.....	189
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	189
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	190
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	190
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	191
Brakes – Information Messages.....	190
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	190
Breaking-In.....	283

## C

Canceling the Set Speed.....	219
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....	242
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....	241
Capacities and Specifications.....	351
Catalytic Converter.....	178
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	178
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	178
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	178
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	178
Center Display Limitations.....	370
Center Display Overview.....	370
Center Display Precautions.....	370
Changing a Flat Tire.....	346
Changing a Road Wheel.....	346
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry.....	45
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	241
Charging a Device.....	145
Charging a Wireless Device.....	149
Checking MyKey System Status.....	50
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	189
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	181
Checking the Seatbelts.....	37
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	330
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	80
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	29
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	30



# Index

Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	30
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	29
Child Restraints.....	31
Installing Child Restraints.....	31
Child Safety.....	28
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	29
Child Restraints.....	31
Child Safety Locks.....	32
Child Safety Precautions.....	28
Cigar Lighter.....	148
Cigar Lighter Precautions.....	148
Cleaning the Exterior.....	323
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	324
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	323
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	323
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	324
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	324
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	323
Cleaning the Underbody.....	324
Cleaning Wheels.....	323
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	323
Cleaning the Interior.....	324
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	326
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	325
Cleaning Fabric.....	325
Cleaning Leather.....	325
Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	326
Cleaning Plastic.....	325
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	326
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	326
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	324
Cleaning Vinyl.....	326
Clearing All MyKeys.....	50
Climate Control.....	126
Auto Mode.....	128
Climate Control Hints.....	129
Closing the Liftgate.....	63
Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	68
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	67
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	63
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	68
Clutch Fluid Specification.....	181
Cold Weather Precautions.....	283
Configuring the Trip Computer.....	118
Connected Vehicle.....	363
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	364
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	363
Connected Vehicle Data.....	23
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	363
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	363
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	364
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	364
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	379
Connecting a Trailer.....	279
Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....	279
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	363
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	363
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	363
What Is the Modem.....	363
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	363
Connecting Your Phone.....	374
Coolant.....	309
Adding Coolant.....	310
Changing the Coolant.....	311
Checking the Coolant Level.....	310
Coolant – Information Messages.....	312
Coolant Precautions.....	309
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	312
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	311
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	354
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	355
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	286
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	288
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	290
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	286
Post-Crash Alert System.....	287
Post Impact Braking.....	288
Recovery Towing.....	289

# Index

Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	50
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	50
Cross Traffic Alert.....	260
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	262
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	261
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	262
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	260
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	260
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	262
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	262
Cross Traffic Alert – Warning Lamps.....	262
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	261
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	261
What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	261
Cruise Control.....	218
Cruise Control Indicators.....	219
Cup Holders.....	151
Cup Holder Precautions.....	151
Customer Information.....	386
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....	114
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	117
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	117
<b>D</b>	
Data Privacy.....	21
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	368
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	368
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	368
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	368
Directing the Flow of Air.....	128
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	239
Distance Alert.....	266
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert.....	266
What Is Distance Alert.....	266
Distance Indication.....	266
Distance Indication Indicator.....	266
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	266
What Is Distance Indication.....	266
Door Lock Indicators.....	58
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	57
How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor Work.....	57
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	58
Doors and Locks.....	54
Autorelock.....	58
Autounlock.....	57
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	57
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	58
Mislock.....	57
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	54
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	58
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	59
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	58
Drive Mode Control.....	235
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	236
Drive Modes.....	235
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	236
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	236
Drive Modes.....	235
Eco.....	235
Normal.....	235
Slippery.....	235
Sport.....	235
Track.....	236
Trail.....	236

# Index

Driver Alert.....	269
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	270
Driver Alert Precautions.....	269
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	270
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	270
Driving Economically.....	283
Driving Hints.....	283
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	283

## E

Eco Coach.....	237
Efficient Drive Mode.....	239
Trip Summary.....	239
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators.....	240
Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Warning.....	193
Electric Parking Brake.....	192
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	194
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	194
Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	194
Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Lamps.....	194
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	413
Emergency Assistance.....	43
Emergency Call Limitations.....	44
Emergency Call Requirements.....	43
Emergency Call System Data.....	24
Emergency Equipment.....	294
Emergency Towing.....	292
Enabling Apps on an Android	
Device.....	380
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	380
Enabling Remote Start.....	124
End User License Agreement.....	387
Engine Coolant Temperature	
Gauge.....	108
Engine Cooling Fan.....	309
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification –	
1.0L EcoBoost™.....	353
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification –	
2.3L EcoBoost™.....	354
Engine Oil.....	308
Adding Engine Oil.....	308
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	308
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	308
Resetting the Engine Oil Change	
Reminder.....	309
Engine Specifications – 1.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	351
Engine Specifications – 2.3L	
EcoBoost™.....	352
Entering a Parallel Parking Space –	
Vehicles With: Fully Active Park	
Assist.....	213
Entering a Parallel Parking Space –	
Vehicles With: Semi Active Park	
Assist.....	214
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space	
– Vehicles With: Fully Active Park	
Assist.....	214
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space	
– Vehicles With: Semi Active Park	
Assist.....	215
Environment.....	25
Evasive Steering Assist.....	267
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	267
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and	
Off.....	267
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	267
Event Data.....	22
Exiting a Parking Space – Vehicles With:	
Fully Active Park Assist.....	215
Exiting a Parking Space – Vehicles With:	
Semi Active Park Assist.....	216
Exterior Bulbs.....	317
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb.....	319
Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp	
Bulb.....	320
Changing a Stoplamp Bulb.....	319
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	317
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	318
Exterior Lamps.....	85
Exterior Lamp Audible Warning.....	86
Exterior Lamp Indicators.....	86
How Do Cornering Lamps Work.....	85
Switching the Front Fog Lamps On and	
Off.....	86
Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On and	
Off.....	86
Switching the Turn Signal Lamps On and	
Off.....	85
Exterior Lighting Control.....	83

# Index

Exterior Lighting.....	83
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	92
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	94
Autolamps.....	85
Automatic High Beam Control.....	87
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	89
Exterior Lamps.....	85
Glare Free High Beam Control.....	89
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	92
Headlamps.....	83
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	84
Exterior Mirrors.....	103

## F

Fail-Safe Cooling.....	290
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	290
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	291
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	290
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	290
Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan.....	309
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	34
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	346
Floor Mats.....	284
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	103
Front Parking Aid.....	204
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	205
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	204
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	205
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	204
Front Seat Precautions.....	132
Front Seats.....	132
Heated Seats.....	138
Manual Seats – Vehicles With: 2-Way Manual Seat.....	133
Manual Seats – Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat.....	135
Power Seats.....	137
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings.....	177

Fuel and Refueling.....	171
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	177
Fuel Quality.....	171
Refueling.....	173
Running Out of Fuel.....	172
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	171
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	177
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	177
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	177
Fuel Economy Display.....	115
Fuel Gauge.....	107
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	108
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	108
What Is Distance to Empty.....	108
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	107
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	108
Fuel Quality.....	171
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	171
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	175
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	176
Fuse Precautions.....	295
Fuses.....	295
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	302
Interior Fuse Box.....	299
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	295
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	302
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	302

## G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions.....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements.....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	179
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	180
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	179

# Index

Glare Free High Beam Control.....	89	Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	123
Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators.....	91	Head Up Display – Information Messages.....	123
Glare Free High Beam Control Limitations.....	91	Heated Seats.....	138
Glare Free High Beam Control Precautions.....	90	Heated Seat Precautions.....	138
Glare Free High Beam Control Requirements.....	90	Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	139
How Does Glare Free High Beam Control Work.....	89	Heating	
Overriding Glare Free High Beam Control.....	91	See: Climate Control.....	126
Switching Glare Free High Beam Control On and Off.....	91	Hill Start Assist.....	195
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	92	Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	195
Glare Free High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	92	Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	195
Global Opening and Closing.....	99	Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	195
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	100	Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	195
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	100	Hood Lock	
Using Global Closing.....	100	See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	303
Using Global Opening.....	99	How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	220
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	99	How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	220
		How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work.....	158
H		How Does Auto Hold Work.....	196
Headlamps.....	83	How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	255
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	84	How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	260
Headlamp Indicators.....	84	How Does Driver Alert Work.....	269
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	83	How Does Eco Coach Work.....	237
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	83	How Does Emergency Assistance Work.....	43
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	84	How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	195
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	84	How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work.....	237
Head Up Display.....	120	How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work.....	264
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	123	How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	263
Head Up Display Indicators.....	123	How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work.....	271
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	121	How Does Stability Control Work.....	200
Head Up Display Settings - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	120	How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work.....	211
		How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work.....	179

# Index

How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	243
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	246
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	143
How Does the Speed Limiter Work.....	241
How Does Traction Control Work.....	198
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....	273
How Does Trip Summary Work.....	237
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	39
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	39
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	40
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics.....	158
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators.....	158
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	158
<b>I</b>	
Identifying Fuse Types.....	302
Inflating the Tires.....	330
Information On Demand Screen.....	371
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	335
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover.....	277
Instrument Cluster Display.....	113
Personalized Settings.....	114
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	113
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	110
Instrument Cluster.....	106
Fuel Gauge.....	107
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	107
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	106
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	108
Instrument Panel.....	27
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	231
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	231
How Does Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	231
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Alerts.....	232
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	232
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	231
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	231
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off.....	231
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	245
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	245
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	243
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	245
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	243
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	245
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions.....	245
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	242
Interior Fuse Box.....	299
Accessing the Interior Fuse Box.....	300
Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box.....	300
Locating the Interior Fuse Box.....	299
Interior Lamp Function.....	95
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	95
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	95
Interior Lighting.....	95
Ambient Lighting.....	96
Interior Lamp Function.....	95
Interior Mirror.....	102
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	102
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	102
Introduction.....	17
<b>J</b>	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	286
Jump Starting Precautions.....	286

# Index

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	286
Preparing the Vehicle.....	286
<b>K</b>	
Keyless Entry.....	60
Keyless Entry Settings.....	60
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	62
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Using Keyless Entry.....	61
Locking and Unlocking the Liftgate Using Keyless Entry.....	62
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	60
Keyless Entry Settings.....	60
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....	60
Switching Keyless Entry On and Off.....	60
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	62
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	62
Keys and Remote Controls.....	45
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	47
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	47
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	47
<b>L</b>	
Lane Centering.....	228
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	228
Lane Centering Alerts.....	230
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	230
Lane Centering Indicators.....	230
Lane Centering Limitations.....	229
Lane Centering Precautions.....	229
Lane Centering Requirements.....	229
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	229
Lane Keeping System Indicators – Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	249
Lane Keeping System Indicators – Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	249
Lane Keeping System.....	246
Aid Mode.....	248
Alert and Aid Mode.....	248
Alert Mode.....	247
Blind Spot Assist – Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System, Vehicles Without: Trailer Tow.....	250
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage – Vehicles With: Blind Spot Information System/Trailer Tow.....	252
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	254
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	247
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	246
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	247
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	254
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	254
Launch Control Indicators.....	322
Launch Control.....	322
Launch Control Limitations.....	322
Launch Control Precautions.....	322
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	281
Liftgate.....	63
Closing the Liftgate.....	63
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	64
Opening the Liftgate.....	63
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	69
Liftgate Precautions.....	63
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	64
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....	71
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	64
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	64
Live Traffic.....	382
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	382
What Is Live Traffic.....	382
Load Carrying.....	275
Roof Rack.....	275
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	276
Load Carrying Precautions.....	275
Loading Your Trailer.....	281
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	256
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	189

# Index

Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	261	Coolant.....	309
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	172	Engine Oil.....	308
Locating the Power Outlets.....	147	Exterior Bulbs.....	317
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors		Maintenance Precautions.....	303
- Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	265	Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	376
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors		Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	193
- Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	265	Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters.....	185
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	208	Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters.....	185
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	337	Manual Seats.....	140
Locating the USB Ports.....	145	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	140
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	149	Folding the Seat Backrest.....	140
Locating Your Vehicle.....	45	Removing the Head Restraint.....	140
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Using Keyless Entry.....	61	Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	142
Double Locking the Doors.....	62	Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 2-Way Manual Seat.....	133
Locking the Doors.....	61	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	133
Unlocking the Doors.....	61	Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	134
Locking and Unlocking the Liftgate Using Keyless Entry.....	62	Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	134
Locking the Liftgate.....	62	Removing the Head Restraint.....	133
Unlocking the Liftgate.....	62	Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat.....	135
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	101	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	135
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	76	Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	136
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	77	Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	136
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	278	Adjusting the Seat Height.....	136
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	278	Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	135
Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions.....	278	Removing the Head Restraint.....	135
Luggage Compartment.....	277	Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	359
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	278	Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™.....	358
Luggage Compartment Precautions.....	277	Manual Transmission.....	181
		Manual Transmission - Troubleshooting.....	182
		Manual Transmission Precautions.....	181
		Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	181
		Manual Transmission - Troubleshooting.....	182
		Manual Transmission - Frequently Asked Questions.....	182
		Mislock.....	57
		How Does Mislock Work.....	58
Maintenance.....	303		
12V Battery.....	313		
12V Battery - Troubleshooting.....	315		

M



# Index

Mislock Limitations.....	58
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	58
What Is Mislock.....	57
Mobile Communications	
Equipment.....	386
Mobile Device Data.....	23
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	105
Overriding Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	105
What Is Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	105
Moonroof.....	104
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	105
Muting the Audio.....	366
MyKey Settings.....	48
Configurable MyKey Settings.....	48
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings.....	48
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	51
MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions.....	53
MyKey – Information Messages.....	51
MyKey™.....	48
MyKey Settings.....	48
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	51
<b>N</b>	
Navigation Map Updates.....	382
Navigation.....	382
Adjusting the Map.....	382
Live Traffic.....	382
Route Guidance.....	383
Setting a Destination.....	382
Waypoints.....	383
<b>O</b>	
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	303
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	104
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....	104
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	99
Opening the Liftgate.....	63
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	66
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	65
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	63
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	63
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	56
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	54
Double Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	55
Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	55
Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	56
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	54
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	54
Overriding the Set Speed.....	228
<b>P</b>	
Parking Aid Indicators.....	206
Parking Aid Precautions.....	202
Parking Aids.....	202
Front Parking Aid.....	204
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	207
Principle of Operation.....	202
Rear Parking Aid.....	203
Side Parking Aid.....	205
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	207
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	207
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	72
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	72
Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	72
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	72
Performing a Master Reset.....	385
Personalized Settings.....	114
Changing the Instrument Cluster Display Language.....	114
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	114
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	114
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	114
Switching the Instrument Cluster Display Audible Warnings On and Off.....	115
Phone Menu.....	374

# Index

---

Phone.....	374	Puncture.....	
Phone Precautions.....	374	See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	346
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	379	Push Button Ignition Switch.....	152
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	145		
Playing or Pausing the Audio		<b>R</b>	
Source.....	366	Rear Occupant Alert System Audible	
Post-Crash Alert System.....	287	Warnings.....	144
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System		Rear Occupant Alert System	
Work.....	288	Indicators.....	144
Post-Crash Alert System		Rear Occupant Alert System	
Limitations.....	288	Limitations.....	143
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System		Rear Occupant Alert System	
Off.....	288	Precautions.....	143
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	287	Rear Occupant Alert System.....	143
Post Impact Braking.....	288	Rear Parking Aid.....	203
How Does Post Impact Braking		Locating the Rear Parking Aid	
Work.....	288	Sensors.....	204
Overriding Post Impact Braking.....	288	Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	204
Post Impact Braking Indicators.....	288	Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	203
Post Impact Braking Limitations.....	288	What Is the Rear Parking Aid.....	203
Power Outlet.....	147	Rear Seat Precautions.....	140
Power Outlet Precautions.....	147	Rear Seats.....	140
Power Seats.....	137	Manual Seats.....	140
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	137	Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	208
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	138	Rear View Camera Limitations.....	208
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	138	Rear View Camera Precautions.....	208
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	138	Rear View Camera.....	208
Moving the Seat Backward and		Rear View Camera Settings.....	209
Forward.....	137	Rear View Camera Settings.....	209
Removing the Head Restraint.....	137	Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and	
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	264	Off.....	210
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	264	Switching Rear View Camera Object	
Pre-Collision Assist.....	263	Distance Indicator On and Off.....	210
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	266	Zooming the Rear View Camera In and	
Distance Alert.....	266	Out.....	209
Distance Indication.....	266	Recovery Towing.....	289
Evasive Steering Assist.....	267	Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	289
Pre-Collision Assist –		Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	289
Troubleshooting.....	267	Installing the Towing Eye.....	290
Pre-Collision Assist –		Locating the Towing Eye.....	289
Troubleshooting.....	267	Refueling.....	173
Pre-Collision Assist – Information		Refueling System Overview.....	173
Messages.....	268	Refueling Your Vehicle.....	173
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning		Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if	
Lamps.....	267	the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of	
Programming a MyKey.....	50	Charge.....	193
Protecting the Environment.....	25	Remote Control Limitations.....	45

# Index

Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	124
Remote Start Limitations.....	124
Remote Start.....	124
Remote Start Settings.....	124
Removing the Key Blade.....	45
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	327
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	386
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	47
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	80
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	81
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....	56
Resetting Driver Alert.....	270
Resetting the Individual Trip Values.....	118
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	118
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	343
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	343
Restarting the Engine.....	160
Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	242
Resuming the Set Speed.....	219
Reverse Wipe.....	80
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	80
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	80
Roof Rack.....	275
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	276
Roof Rack Precautions.....	275
Route Guidance.....	383
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	383
Canceling Route Guidance.....	383
Repeating an Instruction.....	383
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	283
Running Out of Fuel.....	172
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	172
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	172

## S

Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	367
Seatbelt Precautions.....	34
Seatbelt Reminder.....	36
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	37
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	37
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	36
Seatbelts.....	34
Seatbelt Reminder.....	36
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	38
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	38
Seatbelts – Information Messages.....	38
Security.....	72
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	72
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	73
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	72
Security – Troubleshooting.....	74
Security – Troubleshooting.....	74
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	75
Security – Information Messages.....	74
Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST.....	235
Selecting a Drive Mode - ST.....	235
Selecting a Menu Item.....	367
Selecting the Audio Source.....	366
Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	377
Service Data.....	22
Setting a Destination.....	382
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	383
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	383
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	383
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	383
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	382
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	382
Setting a Memory Preset.....	366
Settings Data.....	23
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	225

# Index

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	226
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	224
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	224
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	127
Setting the Clock and Date.....	367
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	218
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....	67
Setting the Speed Limit.....	241
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance.....	272
Setting the Temperature.....	127
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance.....	274
Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning.....	274
Setting the Wake Word.....	372
Shifting Into Reverse.....	181
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P).....	187
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	184
Side Parking Aid.....	205
Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors.....	206
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	206
Side Parking Aid Limitations.....	205
What is the Side Parking Aid.....	205
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	132
Speed Control See: Cruise Control.....	218
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	242
Speed Limiter Indicators.....	242
Speed Limiter Precautions.....	241
Speed Limiter.....	241
Speedometer.....	107
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators.....	271
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations.....	271
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions.....	271
Speed Sign Recognition.....	271
Speed Sign Recognition - Troubleshooting.....	272
Speed Sign Recognition - Troubleshooting.....	272
Speed Sign Recognition - Information Messages.....	272
Stability Control Indicator - ST.....	201
Stability Control.....	200
Stability Control - Troubleshooting - ST.....	201
Stability Control - Troubleshooting - ST.....	201
Stability Control - Information Messages.....	201
Stability Control - Warning Lamps.....	201
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Precautions.....	152
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	152
Automatic Engine Stop.....	155
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Troubleshooting.....	156
Starting the Engine.....	153
Stopping the Engine.....	154
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Troubleshooting.....	156
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Frequently Asked Questions.....	157
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Information Messages.....	156
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Warning Lamps.....	156
Starting the Engine.....	153
Restarting the Engine After Stopping it.....	153
Starting a Flooded Engine.....	153
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	153
Status Bar.....	370
Stay in Neutral Mode.....	185
Entering Stay in Neutral Mode.....	186
Exiting Stay in Neutral Mode.....	186
Stay in Neutral Mode Precautions.....	186
What Is Stay in Neutral Mode.....	185
Steering Wheel - Excluding: ST.....	26
Steering Wheel.....	76
Steering Wheel - ST.....	26
Stopping the Engine.....	159
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	154
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	154

# Index

---

Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	69
Storage.....	151
Cup Holders.....	151
Storing a First Aid Kit.....	294
Storing a Warning Triangle.....	294
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	104
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off.....	213
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	223
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	126
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95
Switching Android Auto On and Off.....	381
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	381
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	196
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	159
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	256
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	126
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	261
Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	218
Switching Defrost On and Off.....	126
Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/SYNC 2.5.....	269
Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 4.....	269
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	239
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	239
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	228
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	245
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission.....	195
Switching Launch Control On and Off.....	322
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	127
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	126
Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	203
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....	143
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	126
Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST.....	200
Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST.....	200
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	378
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off.....	211
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	366
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	131
Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	131
Switching the Display On and Off.....	368
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	97
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	286
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	120
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	120
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	127
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	127
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	77

# Index

Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield.....	127
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....	243
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....	243
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	247
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	247
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	66
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	67
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	95
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	80
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....	241
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....	241
Switching Traction Control On and Off - Excluding: ST.....	198
Symbols Glossary.....	18
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....	18

## T

Tachometer.....	107
Technical Specifications See: Capacities and Specifications.....	351
Tire Care.....	330
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	342
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	342
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	342
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	344
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	344
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Information Messages.....	345
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps.....	344
Tire Pressure Specifications - Active.....	332
Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: Active/ST.....	330
Tire Pressure Specifications - ST.....	333
Tire Rotation.....	335
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....	337
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....	337
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	337
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	276
Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities.....	276
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	281
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	280
Towing a Trailer.....	280
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	282
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	282
Recommended Towing Weights.....	282
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	292
Towing Your Vehicle.....	292
Track Use Precautions.....	321
Track Use.....	321
Traction Control Indicator.....	198
Traction Control.....	198
Traction Control - Troubleshooting - Excluding: ST.....	198
Traction Control - Troubleshooting - Excluding: ST.....	198
Traction Control - Information Messages.....	199
Traction Control - Warning Lamps.....	198
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....	273
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations.....	273
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions.....	273
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	273
Traffic Sign Recognition - Troubleshooting.....	274
Traffic Sign Recognition - Troubleshooting.....	274
Traffic Sign Recognition - Information Messages.....	274
Trailer Brake Precautions.....	280
Trailer Towing Hints.....	281

# Index

Trip Computer.....	118
Trip Data.....	118
Trip Summary.....	239
How Does Trip Summary Work.....	239
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	239
Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tire Pressure Specifications -	
Active.....	332
See: Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding:	
Active/ST.....	330
See: Tire Pressure Specifications - ST.....	333
<b>U</b>	
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	295
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	295
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood	
Fuse Box.....	296
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	295
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	305
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L	
EcoBoost™.....	307
Updating the Vehicle Systems	
Wirelessly.....	384
USB Ports.....	145
Using Auto Hold - Automatic	
Transmission.....	196
Using Auto Hold - Manual	
Transmission.....	196
Using Launch Control.....	322
Using MyKey With Remote Start	
Systems.....	51
Using Snow Chains - Excluding: Active/	
ST.....	328
Using Snow Chains.....	328
Using Summer Tires.....	328
Using the Cigar Lighter.....	148
Using the Instrument Cluster Display	
Controls.....	113
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator	
Kit.....	338
Using This Publication.....	17
Using Winter Tires.....	328

## V

Vehicle Care.....	323
Cleaning the Exterior.....	323
Cleaning the Interior.....	324
Vehicle Identification Number.....	361
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Number.....	361
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	361
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Plate.....	361
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	361
Vehicle Identification.....	361
Vehicle Identification Number.....	361
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	361
Vehicle System Updates.....	384
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	126
Venting the Moonroof.....	105
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency	
Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch	
Instrument Cluster Display	
Screen.....	237
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency	
Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch	
Instrument Cluster Display	
Screen.....	237
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles	
With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster	
Display Screen.....	343
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles	
With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster	
Display Screen.....	342
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles	
With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster	
Display Screen.....	238
Viewing the Trip Summary - Vehicles	
With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster	
Display Screen.....	237
Visual Search.....	26
Voice Interaction Examples.....	372
Voice Interaction.....	372

## W

Warnings and Notes Used in This	
Publication.....	17
Washer Fluid Specification.....	358

# Index

Washers.....	81	What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	143
Adding Washer Fluid.....	82	What Is the Rear View Camera.....	208
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	81	What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	342
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	82	What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	337
Using the Windshield Washer.....	81	What Is the Trip Summary.....	115
Washer Precautions.....	81	What Is Traction Control.....	198
Washers		What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	273
See: Wipers and Washers.....	78	What Is Voice Interaction.....	372
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	327	Wheel and Tire Information.....	328
Waypoints.....	383	Wheel Nuts.....	350
Adding a Waypoint.....	383	Wi Fi	
Editing Waypoints.....	383	See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	363
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	110	Window Bounce-Back.....	100
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	108	Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	100
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	363	Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	100
What Is Active Park Assist.....	213	What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	100
What Is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	158	Windows.....	99
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	159	Global Opening and Closing.....	99
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	255	Window Bounce-Back.....	100
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	260	Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	82
What Is Cruise Control.....	218	Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	82
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	235	Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	82
What Is Driver Alert.....	269	Wipers and Washers.....	78
What Is Eco Coach.....	237	Autowipers.....	79
What Is Efficient Drive Mode.....	239	Reverse Wipe.....	80
What Is Emergency Assistance.....	43	Washers.....	81
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	195	Wipers.....	78
What Is Launch Control.....	322	Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	82
What Is MyKey.....	48	Wipers.....	78
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	263	Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	78
What Is Remote Start.....	124	Wiper Precautions.....	78
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	271	Wireless Accessory Charger Indicators.....	149
What Is Stability Control.....	200	Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....	150
What Is the 180 Degree Camera.....	211	Wireless Accessory Charger – Information Messages.....	150
What Is the Auxiliary Heater.....	131		
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	178		
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	192		
What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	179		
What Is the Head Up Display.....	120		
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	243		
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	246		
What Is the Power Outlet.....	147		



# Index

---

Wireless Accessory Charger.....	149
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....	150





